## GENERAL PRECAUTIONS REGARDING THE INSTALLATION AND SERVICE FOR THE COPIER FC-210/310

The installation and service should be done by a qualified service technician.

## 1. Transportation/Installation

- When transporting/installing the copier, move it by the casters while lifting the stoppers. The copier is quite heavy and weighs approximately $187 \mathrm{~kg}(413 \mathrm{lb})$, therefore pay full attention when handling it.
- Be sure to use a dedicated outlet with AC 115 V or $120 \mathrm{~V} / 20 \mathrm{~A}(220 \mathrm{~V}, 230 \mathrm{~V}, 240 \mathrm{~V} / 10 \mathrm{~A})$ or more for its power source.
- The copier must be grounded for safety. Never ground it to a gas pipe or a water pipe.
- Select a suitable place for installation.

Avoid excessive heat, high humidity, dust, vibration and direct sunlight.

- Also provide proper ventilation as the copier emits a slight amount of ozone.
- To insure adequate working space for the copying operation, keep a minimum clearance of $80 \mathrm{~cm}\left(32^{\prime \prime}\right)$ on the left, 80 cm ( $32^{\prime \prime}$ ) on the right and $10 \mathrm{~cm}\left(4^{\prime \prime}\right)$ in the rear.
- The socket-outlet shall be installed near the copier and shall be easily accessible.


## 2. Service of Machines

- Basically, be sure to turn the main switch off and unplug the power cord during service.
- Be sure not to touch high-temperature sections such as the exposure lamp, the fuser unit, the damp heater and their periphery.
- Be sure not to touch high-voltage sections such as the chargers, high-voltage transformer, exposure lamp control inverter, inverter for the LCD backlight and power supply unit. Especially, the board of these components should not be touched since the electirc charge may remain in the condensers, etc. on them even after the power is turned OFF.
- Be sure not to touch rotating/operating sections such as gears, belts, pulleys, fan, etc.
- Be careful when removing the covers since there might be the parts with very sharp edges underneath.
- When servicing the machines with the main switch turned on, be sure not to touch live sections and rotating/operating sections. Avoid exposure to laser radiation.
- Use suitable measuring instruments and tools.
- Avoid exposure to laser radiation during servicing.
- Avoid direct exposure to the beam.
- Do not insert tools, parts, etc. that are reflective into the path of the laser beam.
- Remove all watches, rings, bracelets, etc. that are reflective.


## 3. Main Service Parts for Safety

- The breaker, door switch, fuse, thermostat, thermofuse, thermistor, etc. are particularly important for safety. Be sure to handle/install them properly.
If these parts are shorted circuit and/or made their functions out, they may burn down, for instance, and may result in fatal accidents.
Do not allow a short circuit to occur.
Do not use the parts not recommended by Toshiba TEC Corporation.


## 4. Cautionary Labels

- During servicing, be sure to check the rating plate and the cautionary labels such as "Unplug the power cord during service", "Hot area", "Laser warning label" etc. to see if there is any dirt on their surface and whether they are properly stuck to the copier.


## 5. Disposition of Consumable Parts/Packing Materials

- Regarding the recovery and disposal of the copier, supplies, consumable parts and packing materials, it is recommended to follow the relevant local regulations or rules.

6. When parts are disassembled, reassembly is basically the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise noted in this manual or other related documents. Be careful not to reassemble small parts such as screws, washers, pins, E-rings, star washers in the wrong places.
7. Basically, the machine should not be operated with any parts removed or disassembled.

## 8. Precautions Against Static Electricity

- The PC board must be stored in an anti-electrostatic bag and handled carefully using a wristband, because the ICs on it may become damaged due to static electricity.
Caution: Before using the wristband, pull out the power cord plug of the copier and make sure that there are no uninsulated charged objects in the vicinity.

```
Caution: Dispose of used batteries and RAM-ICs including lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.
Attention: Se débarrasser de batteries et RAM-ICs usés y compris les batteries en lithium selon les instructions du fabricant.
Vorsicht: Entsorgung des gebrauchten Batterien und RAM-ICs (inklusive der Lithium-Batterie) nach Angaben des Herstellers.
```


## 1. ERROR CODE AND SELFDIAGNOSIS

## 2. ADJUSTMENT

## 3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

## 4. TROUBLESHOOTING

5. UPDATING THE FIRMWARE

## 6. POWER SUPPLY UNIT

7. WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION DIAGRAMS

## CONTENTS

1. ERROR CODE AND SELF-DIAGNOSIS ..... 1-1
1.1 Error Code List ..... 1-1
1.2 Self-Diagnosis Mode ..... 1-6
1.2.1 Input check (Test mode 03) ..... 1-8
1.2.2 Output check (Test mode 03) ..... 1-15
1.2.3 Test print mode (04) ..... 1-19
1.2.4 Adjustment mode (05) ..... 1-20
1.2.5 Setting mode (08) ..... 1-33
2. ADJUSTMENT ..... 2-1
2.1 Adjustment Order (Image Related Adjustment) ..... 2-1
2.2 Adjustment of the Auto-Toner Sensor ..... 2-2
2.2.1 Automatic removing of developer material ..... 2-2
2.2.2 Initialization of auto-toner sensor ..... 2-3
2.3 Adjustment of Image Quality Control ..... 2-7
2.4 Adjustment of Color Registration Control ..... 2-8
2.5 Image Dimensional Adjustment ..... 2-9
2.5.1 Paper alignment (paper buckle) at the registration roller ..... 2-11
2.5.2 Registration motor speed adjustment ..... 2-12
2.5.3 Printer section related adjustment ..... 2-13
2.5.4 Scanner related adjustment ..... 2-16
2.6 Image Quality Adjustment ..... 2-24
2.6.1 Automatic gamma adjustment ..... 2-24
2.6.2 Density adjustment ..... 2-25
2.6.3 Color balance adjustment ..... 2-26
2.6.4 Offset adjustment for background processing ..... 2-27
2.6.5 Judgment threshold for ACS ..... 2-27
2.6.6 Al mode setting ..... 2-28
2.6.7 Sharpness adjustment ..... 2-39
2.7 High-Voltage Transformer Settings ..... 2-30
2.7.1 Overview ..... 2-30
2.7.2 Settings after replacing main high-voltage transformers ..... 2-30
2.7.3 Settings after replacing transfer transformer ..... 2-31
2.8 Adjustment of the Developer Unit ..... 2-32
2.8.1 Doctor-to-Sleeve Gap ..... 2-32
2.9 Adjustment of the Scanner Section ..... 2-33
2.9.1 Carriages ..... 2-33
2.9.2 Lens unit ..... 2-37
2.10 Adjustment of the Paper Feeding System ..... 2-39
2.10.1 Cassette sidewise deviation ..... 2-39
2.11 Key Copy Counter (MU-8, MU-10) ..... 2-40
3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) ..... 3-1
3.1 Types of Preventive Maintenance ..... 3-1
3.2 Outline of the Maintenance Order ..... 3-2
3.3 Preventive Maintenance Checklist ..... 3-2
3.4 PM Kit ..... 3-11
3.5 List of Adjustment Tools ..... 3-12
3.6 Precautions for Storing/Handling Supplies and Parts ..... 3-13
3.6.1 Precautions for storing TOSHIBA supplies ..... 3-13
3.6.2 Checking and cleaning of the photoconductive drum ..... 3-13
3.6.3 Checking and cleaning of the drum cleaning blade and transfer belt cleaning blade ..... 3-15
3.6.4 Checking and replacing the transfer belt ..... 3-15
3.6.5 Checking and replacing the transfer roller and fuser roller ..... 3-15
3.6.6 Checking and cleaning of the fuser belt and lower heat roller ..... 3-15
3.6.7 Checking and replacing the oil roller and cleaning roller ..... 3-16
4. TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 4-1
4.1 Diagnosis and Prescription for Each Error Code ..... 4-1
4.1.1 Paper transport jam inside the copier ..... 4-1
4.1.2 Paper feeding jam ..... 4-4
4.1.3 Paper transport jam (Paper not reaching the registration sensor after feeding) ..... 4-6
4.1.4 Cover open jam ..... 4-7
4.1.5 Paper jam in ADU and reversing area ..... 4-9
4.1.6 Original jam in the RADF ..... 4-10
4.1.7 Paper jam in the finisher ..... 4-12
4.1.8 Special sheet jam ..... 4-20
4.1.9 Drive system related service call ..... 4-21
4.1.10 Paper feeding system related service call ..... 4-23
4.1.11 Scanner related service call ..... 4-25
4.1.12 Copy process related service call ..... 4-26
4.1.13 Fuser unit related service call ..... 4-29
4.1.14 Communications related service call ..... 4-31
4.1.15 ADF related service call ..... 4-32
4.1.16 Other service call (1) ..... 4-33
4.1.17 Laser optical unit related service call ..... 4-34
4.1.18 Finisher related service call ..... 4-36
4.1.19 Image quality related service call ..... 4-54
4.1.20 Other service call (2) ..... 4-62
4.1.21 Image processing related service call ..... 4-63
4.2 Troubleshooting of Image ..... 4-64
5. UPDATING THE FIRMWARE ..... 5-1
5.1 Installing Software for Firmware Update ..... 5-2
5.1.1 Outline ..... 5-2
5.1.2 Requirements ..... 5-2
5.1.3 Dial-up networking function ..... 5-4
5.1.4 Installing dial-up networking ..... 5-8
5.1.5 Setting dial-up networking ..... 5-10
5.1.6 Installing software for FTP server ..... 5-14
5.2 Operation Procedure in [3][9] Mode ..... 5-18
5.2.1 Outline ..... 5-18
5.2.2 Preparation ..... 5-18
5.2.3 Updating firmware ..... 5-20
5.2.4 Display ..... 5-28
5.3 Updating the Firmware Using the Downloading Jig ..... 5-32
5.3.1 System firmware ..... 5-33
5.3.2 Engine firmware ..... 5-39
6. POWER SUPPLY UNIT ..... 6-1
6.1 Output Channel ..... 6-1
7. WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION DIAGRAMS ..... 7-1
7.1 AC Wire Harness ..... 7-2
7.2 DC Wire Harness Appendix
<Appendix> SPECIFICATIONS • ACCESSORIES • OPTIONS • SUPPLIES ..... A-1
8. Specifications ..... A-1
9. Accessories ..... A-5
10. Options ..... A-6
11. Replacement Units/Supplies ..... A-6
12. System List ..... A-7

In this manual, colors are sometimes described using abbreviations as listed below:
Yellow :Y
Magenta : M
Cyan: C
Black : K

## 1. ERROR CODES AND SELF-DIAGNOSIS

### 1.1 Error Code List

While the "CLEAR PAPER" or "CALL SERVICE" symbol is flashing, pressing the [CLEAR] key and the digital key [8] at the same time shows one of the following error codes on the copy-quantity indicator as long as those keys are pressed.

| Classification | Error code | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Paper transport jam inside the copier | E01 | Paper leading edge not reaching the exit sensor |
|  | E02 | Paper trailing edge not passing the exit sensor |
|  | E03 | Paper remaining inside the copier at power ON |
|  | EB7 | Restart time-out error |
| Paper feeding jam | E11 | Paper misfeed from the ADU |
|  | E12 | Paper misfeed from the bypass tray |
|  | E13 | Paper misfeed from the 1st cassette |
|  | E14 | Paper misfeed from the 2nd cassette |
|  | E15 | Paper misfeed from the 3rd cassette |
|  | E16 | Paper misfeed from the 4th cassette |
|  | E19 | Paper misfeed from the LCF |
| Paper transport jam <br> (Paper not reaching the registration sensor after feeding) | E21 | Paper transport jam from the LCF |
|  | E22 | Paper transport jam from the 1st cassette |
|  | E23 | Paper transport jam from the 2nd cassette |
|  | E24 | Paper transport jam from the 3rd cassette |
|  | E25 | Paper transport jam from the 4th cassette |
|  | E26 | Paper transport jam from the bypass tray |
| Cover open jam | E41 | Front cover opened during printing |
|  | E42 | Side door opened during printing |
|  | E43 | ADU pulled out during printing |
|  | E45 | LCF jam access cover opened during printing |
|  | E46 | Bypass unit opened during printing |
| Paper transport jam in the ADU and reversing area | E50 | Paper not reaching the ADU |
|  | E51 | Paper not reaching the ADU stack |
|  | E52 | Paper not reaching the ADU path sensor |
|  | E54 | ADU paper transport jam |


| Classification | Error code | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Original jam in the ADF | E71 | Original not reaching the aligning sensor |
|  | E72 | Original not reaching the exit sensor |
|  | E73 | Original not passing the exit sensor |
| Paper jam in the finisher | E9F | Punching jam |
|  | EA1 | Paper transport delay jam |
|  | EA2 | Paper transport stop jam |
|  | EA3 | Paper remaining inside the finisher at power ON |
|  | EA4 | Finisher front door opened during printing |
|  | EA5 | Finisher stapling jam |
|  | EA6 | Finisher early arrival jam |
|  | EA8 | Saddle stitcher stapling jam |
|  | EA9 | Saddle stitcher front door opened during printing |
|  | EAA | Paper remaining in the saddle stitcher at power ON |
|  | EAB | Saddle stitcher transport stop jam |
|  | EAC | Saddle stitcher transport delay jam |
|  | EAE | Finisher receive time-out jam |
| Special sheet jam | EC2 | OHP film jams when not fed from bypass tray or 2nd cassette |
|  | EC3 | OHP film used in non-OHP mode |
| Drive system related service call | C05 | ADU motor rotation abnormal |
|  | C06 | Feed motor rotation abnormal |
|  | COA | Developer motor rotation abnormal |
| Paper feeding system related service call | C11 | ADU paper side guide operation abnormal |
|  | C12 | ADU paper end guide operation abnormal |
|  | C13 | 1st cassette tray operation abnormal |
|  | C14 | 2nd cassette tray operation abnormal |
|  | C15 | 3rd cassette tray operation abnormal |
|  | C16 | 4th cassette tray operation abnormal |
|  | C18 | LCF tray operation abnormal |
| Scanner related service call | C27 | Carriage home position sensor not turning OFF within a fixed time |
|  | C28 | Carriage home position sensor not turning ON within a fixed time |
|  | C29 | Exposure lamp disconnection detected |


| Classification | Error code | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Copy process related service call | C31 | Used toner transport motor rotation abnormal |
|  | C33 | Developer removal shutter abnormal |
|  | C35 | Transfer belt unit contact/release operation abnormal |
|  | C38 | Auto-toner error (K) |
|  | C39 | Auto-toner error (C) |
|  | C3A | Auto-toner error (M) |
|  | C3B | Auto-toner error (Y) |
|  | C3C | Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (K) |
|  | C3D | Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (C) |
|  | C3E | Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (M) |
|  | C3F | Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (Y) |
| Fuser unit related service call | C41 | Thermistor or heater abnormal when warming-up is started |
|  | C42 | Thermistor abnormal after the copier has become ready |
|  | C43 | Thermistor abnormal during warming-up after abnormality judgment |
|  | C44 | Heater abnormal during warming-up after abnormality judgment |
|  | C46 | Heater abnormal (low temperature) after the copier has become ready |
|  | C47 | Rear thermistor abnormal after the copier has become ready |
|  | C48 | Heater abnormal (high temperature) |
|  | C7 | Error C7 |
| Communications related service call | C57 | Communications error between LGC-CPU and IPC board |
|  | C5A | Communications error between LGC-CPU and printer controller |
|  | C5B | LGC-CPU signal transmission error to IMC-CPU |
|  | C5C | LGC-CPU signal reception error from IMC-CPU |
| ADF related service call | C72 | Aligning sensor automatic adjustment error |
|  | C73 | EEPROM initializing error |
|  | C74 | Paper exit sensor automatic adjustment error |
| Other service call (1) | C94 | LGC-CPU abnormal |
|  | C9A | Main memory abnormal |
|  | C9B | LGC-CPU protocol abnormal |
|  | C9D | IMC-CPU protocol abnormal |
|  | C9E | IMC board connection abnormal |


| Classification | Error code | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Laser optical unit related service call | CA1 | Polygonal motor rotation abnormal |
|  | CA2 | H-SYNC abnormal |
|  | CD1 | Laser calibration error (K) |
|  | CD2 | Laser calibration error (C) |
|  | CD3 | Laser calibration error (M) |
|  | CD4 | Laser calibration error (Y) |
| Finisher related service call | CB1 | Feed motor abnormal |
|  | CB2 | Delivery motor abnormal |
|  | CB3 | Tray lift motor abnormal |
|  | CB4 | Alignment motor abnormal |
|  | CB5 | Staple motor abnormal |
|  | CB6 | Stapler shift motor abnormal |
|  | CB7 | Height sensor abnormal |
|  | CB8 | Backup RAM data abnormal |
|  | CB9 | Saddle stitcher/paper pushing plate motor abnormal |
|  | CBA | Saddle stitcher/stitcher motor (front) abnormal |
|  | CBB | Saddle stitcher/stitcher motor (rear) abnormal |
|  | CBC | Saddle stitcher/alignment motor abnormal |
|  | CBD | Saddle stitcher/guide motor abnormal |
|  | CBE | Saddle stitcher/paper folding motor abnormal |
|  | CBF | Saddle stitcher/paper positioning plate motor abnormal |
|  | CD5 | Saddle stitcher/sensor connector connection error |
|  | CD6 | Saddle stitcher/microswitch abnormal |
|  | CD7 | Communication error between finisher and saddle stitcher |
|  | CD9 | Swing motor abnormal |
|  | CDA | Horizontal registration motor abnormal |
|  | CDB | Punch motor abnormal |
| Image quality related service call | CE1 | Image quality sensor abnormal (OFF level) |
|  | CE2 | Image quality sensor abnormal (no pattern level) |
|  | CE4 | Image quality control test pattern abnormal |
|  | CE5 | Temperature/humidity sensor upper-limit abnormal |
|  | CE6 | Drum thermistor abnormal (Y) |
|  | CE9 | Drum thermistor abnormal (K) |
|  | CF1 | Color registration control abnormal |
| Other service call (2) | F07 | Communications error between system-CPU and LGC-CPU |
|  | F09 | Communications error between system-CPU and scanner-CPU |
|  | F10 | HDD formatting error |
|  | F11 | Communications error between system-CPU and scanner-CPU |
|  | F12 | Communications error between system-CPU and scanner-CPU |
| Image processing related service call | F51 | Communications error between system-CPU and AI board during pre-scanning |

<<Error history>>
In the setting mode (08-253), the latest twenty groups of error data will be displayed.
Display example

| $\underline{E A 1}$ | $\underline{010826175732}$ | $\underline{64}$ | $\underline{64}$ | $\underline{236210000000}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Error code | YY MM DD HH MM SS | MMM | NNN | ABCDEFHIJLOP |
| 3 digits | 12 digits (Year is indicated <br> with its last two digits.) | 3 digits | 3 digits | 12 digits |


| A | Paper source |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| B | Paper size code |
|  | 0:A5/ST 1:A5-R 2:ST-R 3:LT 4:A4 5:B5-R 6:LT-R 7:A4-R 8:OTHER/UNIV 9: B5 A: FOLIO/COMP B:LG C:B4 D:LD E:A3 F: 13"LG H:A6-R I: Card Z: Not selected |
| C | Sort mode / staple mode |
|  | 0: Non-sort/Non-staple 1: Group 2: Sort 7: Front staple <br> 8: Double staple <br> 9: Rear staple <br> A: Saddle stitch |
| D | ADF mode |
|  | 0: Unused 1: AUTO FEED (SADF) 2: STACK FEED |
| E | APS / AMS mode |
|  | 0: Not selected 1: APS 2: AMS |
| F | Duplex mode |
|  | 0: Not selected 1:Book 2:Two-sided/Single-sided 4:Two-sided/Duplexed <br> 8: Single-sided / Duplexed |
| G | Unused |
| H | Image shift |
|  | 0: Unused 1: Book 2: Left 4: Right |
| I | Editing |
|  | $\begin{array}{llll}\text { 0: Unused } & \text { 1: Masking } & \text { 2: Trimming } & \text { 3: Mirror image }\end{array}$ 4: Negative / Positive |
| J | Edge erase / Dual-page |
|  | 0: Unused 1: Edge erase 2: Dual-page 3: Edge erase \& Dual-page |
| K | Unused |
| L | Function |
|  | 0: Copying 1: Unused $\quad 2$ : Unused $\quad 3$ : Unused 4 4: Printing $\quad$ 5: Unused |
| MMM | Primary scanning reproduction ratio (Display in hexadecimal) |
|  | (Mx256)+(Mx16)+M |
| NNN | Secondary scanning reproduction ratio (Display in hexadecimal) |
|  | (Nx256)+(Nx16)+N |
| 0 | Color mode |
|  | 0: Auto color 1: Full color 2: Black 3: Monocolor |
| P | AI board |
|  | 0: Unused 1: Used |

## 1. 2 Self-Diagnosis Mode

| Mode | Starting | Contents | Exit |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| Control panel check <br> mode | $[0]+[1]+[P O W E R]$ | All control panel LEDs are lit, <br> and all LCD pixels are turned <br> ON/OFF repeatedly. | $[$ [CLEAR] or <br> $[P O W E R] O F F / O N ~$ |
| Test mode | $[0]+[3]+[P O W E R]$ | Input/output signals are checked. | $[P O W E R] O F F / O N$ |
| Test print mode | $[0]+[4]+[P O W E R]$ | A test pattern print is made. | $[P O W E R] O F F / O N$ |
| Adjustment mode | $[0]+[5]+[P O W E R]$ | Adjustment of various items | $[P O W E R] O F F / O N$ |
| Setting mode | $[0]+[8]+[P O W E R]$ | Setting of various items | $[P O W E R] O F F / O N$ |
| List printing mode | $[9]+[$ START]+[POWER] | Printing of list of 05 and 08 code <br> data | $[P O W E R] O F F / O N$ |

Note: Starting for various modes:
While pressing simultaneously the two digital keys corresponding to the mode you want to set (for example, [0] and [5]), turn ON the main switch [POWER].
<Operation procedure>

- Control panel check mode (01) :


Notes: 1. During the "Check keys" state, [CLEAR] alone can exit.
During the "LEDs light/LCD flashes" state, [CLEAR] can clear the mode.
2. Check keys :

Any key with LED (when it is pressed, the LED goes out.)
Any key without LED (when it is pressed, an indication is displayed in the message area.)

- Test mode (03) : Refer to "1.2.1 Input check (Test mode 03)" and "1.2.2 Output check (Test mode 03)".
-Test print mode (04) : Refer to "1.2.3 Test print mode (04)".
- Adjustment mode (05) : Refer to "1.2.4 Adjustment mode (05)".
- Setting mode (08) : Refer to "1.2.5 Setting mode (08)".
- List printing mode


*1: During the activation of the "Control panel check mode", copying is not possible. But after pressing [CLEAR] to make the copier ready, you can make copies.
*2 : After having used the self-diagnosis mode, be sure to turn OFF and then ON the power before returning the copier to the customer.


### 1.2.1 Input check (Test mode 03)

The status of each item can be checked by setting ON/OFF of each [FULL COLOR], [AUTO COLOR], [ENERGY SAVER], and then pressing each of the corresponding digital key in this test mode 03.
Note: When icon is displayed with black letter on white background, it indicates the value is 0 , while in reverse black and white, it indicates the value is 1 .
[FULL COLOR]key: OFF, [AUTO COLOR]key: OFF, [ENERGY SAVER]key: OFF

| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | 1st cassette paper-empty sensor | 1: No paper |
|  | F | 1st cassette tray-up limit sensor | 1: Tray is upper limit. |
|  | G | 1st cassette feed-jam sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | H | 1st cassette detection switch | 1: No cassette |
| [2] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | 2nd cassette paper-empty sensor | 1: No paper |
|  | F | 2nd cassette tray-up limit sensor | 1: Tray is upper limit. |
|  | G | 2nd cassette feed-jam sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | H | 2nd cassette detection switch | 1: No cassette |
| [3] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | 3rd cassette paper-empty sensor | 1: No paper |
|  | F | 3rd cassette tray-up limit sensor | 1: Tray is upper limit. |
|  | G | 3rd cassette feed-jam sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | H | 3rd cassette detection switch | 1: No cassette |
| [4] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | 4th cassette paper-empty sensor | 1: No paper |
|  | F | 4th cassette tray-up limit sensor | 1: Tray is upper limit. |
|  | G | 4th cassette feed-jam sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | H | 4th cassette detection switch | 1: No cassette |


| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [5] | A | Bypass paper-width sensor 0 | Refer to Table 1. |
|  | B | Bypass paper-width sensor 1 | Refer to Table 1. |
|  | C | Bypass paper-width sensor 2 | Refer to Table 1. |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | Bypass paper sensor | 1: No paper |
|  | F | Bypass unit open/close switch | 1: Unit is opened. |
|  | G | Side door open/close switch | 1: Side door is opened. |
|  | H | Bypass unit is installed or not | 0 : Unit is installed. |
| [6] | A | LCF paper-empty sensor | 1: No paper |
|  | B | LCF lower-limit sensor | 1: Tray limit (lower) |
|  | C | LCF tray-up sensor | 1: Tray limit (upper) |
|  | D | LCF tray-down switch | 0 : Switch is ON. |
|  | E | LCF paper supply door sensor | 1: Door is opened. |
|  | F | LCF is installed or not | 0 : LCF is installed. |
|  | G | ADU motor rotation status <br> (Motor is rotating by output check 03) | 0 : Normal rotation |
|  | H | ADU is installed or not | 0 : ADU is installed. |
| [7] | A | ADU paper-jam sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | B | ADU paper-empty sensor | 0: No paper |
|  | C | ADU end switch | 1: End guide is at home position. |
|  | D | ADU side switch | 1: Side guide is at home position. |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | Key copy counter is installed or not | 0: Key copy counter is installed. |
|  | H | - |  |
| [8] | A | Developer removal shutter home position sensor | 0 : Shutter is at closed position. |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | Transfer belt unit is installed or not | 0 : Unit is installed. |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | Developer motor rotation status <br> (Motor is rotating by output check 03) | 0 : Normal rotation |
|  | G | Transfer belt limit switch | 0 : Transfer belt is in black mode position. |
|  | H | Transfer belt home position switch | 0 : Transfer belt is in color mode position. |


| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [9] | A | External printer controller power ON/OFF | 0: Controller power ON |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | Front cover switch | 1: Front cover is opened. |
|  | E | OHP sensor | 0: Opaque paper is installed. |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | Registration sensor | 1 : Paper present |
|  | H | IPC board (Finisher installation kit) is installed or not | 0: Board is installed. |
| [0] | A | ADU path sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | Exit sensor | 1: Paper present |
|  | D | Paper-exit unit open/close switch | 1: Paper-exit unit is opened. |
|  | E | Toner bag limit sensor | 1: Used toner full |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | - |  |
|  | H | - |  |

Table 1. Relation between bypass paper-width sensor status and paper-width size.

| Bypass paper-width sensor |  |  | Paper-width size |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | A3/LD |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | A4-R/LT-R |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | A5-R/ST-R |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | Card size |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | B4/LG |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | B5-R |

[FULL COLOR]key: OFF, [AUTO COLOR]key: OFF, [ENERGY SAVER]key: ON

| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | - |  |
|  | H | - |  |
| [2] | A | Developer cartridge Y is installed or not | 0: Cartirdge is installed. |
|  | B | Developer cartridge M is installed or not | 0 : Cartirdge is installed. |
|  | C | Developer cartridge C is installed or not | 0: Cartirdge is installed. |
|  | D | Developer cartridge K is installed or not | 0 : Cartirdge is installed. |
|  | E | Processing unit is installed or not | 0 : Unit is installed. |
|  | F | Fuser unit is installed or not | 0 : Unit is installed. |
|  | G | - |  |
|  | H | - |  |
| [3] | A | Wire cleaner home position switch Y | 0 : Cleaning pad is at home position. |
|  | B | Wire cleaner home position switch M | 0 : Cleaning pad is at home position. |
|  | C | Wire cleaner home position switch C | 0 : Cleaning pad is at home position. |
|  | D | Wire cleaner home position switch K | 0 : Cleaning pad is at home position. |
|  | E | Wire cleaner limit switch $Y$ | 0 : Cleaning pad is at limit position. |
|  | F | Wire cleaner limit switch M | 0 : Cleaning pad is at limit position. |
|  | G | Wire cleaner limit switch C | 0 : Cleaning pad is at limit position. |
|  | H | Wire cleaner limit switch K | 0 : Cleaning pad is at limit position. |
| [4] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | - |  |
|  | H | - |  |


| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [5] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | - |  |
|  | H | - |  |
| [6] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | Front cover, paper-exit unit open/close check | 1: Cover/unit is opened. |
|  | H | Polygonal motor rotation status <br> (Motor is rotating by output check 03) | 0 : Normal rotation |
| [7] | - | - |  |
| [8] | - | Upper heat roller thermistor (center) check | Thermistor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| [9] | - | Upper heat roller thermistor (rear) check | Thermistor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| [0] | - | Lower heat roller thermistor (center) check | Thermistor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |

[FULL COLOR]key: OFF, [AUTO COLOR]key: ON, [ENERGY SAVER]key: OFF

| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| $[1]$ | - | Lower heat roller thermistor (rear) check | Thermistor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| $[2]$ | - | Temperature sensor check | Sensor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| $[3]$ | - | Humidity sensor check | Sensor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| $[4]$ | - | Drum thermistor Y check | Thermistor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| $[5]$ | - |  |  |
| $[6]$ | - |  |  |
| $[7]$ | - | Drum thermistor K check | Thermistor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| $[8]$ | - | - |  |
| $[9]$ | - | - |  |
| $[0]$ | - | - |  |

[FULL COLOR]key: OFF, [AUTO COLOR]key: ON, [ENERGY SAVER]key: ON

| Digital key | Icon | Item | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1] | - | - |  |
| [2] | - | Color registration sensor (front) <br> (Sensor LED is turned ON by output check 03.) | " 0 " is displayed with reflection at transfer belt. |
| [3] | - | Color registration sensor (rear) <br> (Sensor LED is turned ON by output check 03.) | " 0 " is displayed with reflection at transfer belt. |
| [4] | - | Image quality sensor | Sensor output value is displayed with 10 bits. |
| [5] | - | - |  |
| [6] | A | ADF aligning sensor | 1: Original present |
|  | B | ADF exit sensor | 1: Original present |
|  | C | ADF open/close sensor | 1: ADF is opened. |
|  | D | ADF empty sensor | 1: Original present |
|  | E | ADF size sensor 1 |  |
|  | F | - |  |
|  | G | ADF size sensor 2 |  |
|  | H | ADF unit is installed or not | 1: ADF unit is installed. |
| [7] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | - |  |
|  | E | - |  |
|  | F | Carriage home position sensor | 1: Carriages are at home position. |
|  | G | - |  |
|  | H | Platen sensor | 1: Platen cover is closed. |
| [8] | A | - |  |
|  | B | - |  |
|  | C | - |  |
|  | D | APS sensor (APS-R) | 1: Original present |
|  | E | APS sensor (APS-C) | 1: Original present |
|  | F | APS sensor (APS-3) | 1: Original present |
|  | G | APS sensor (APS-2) (for A4 series) | 1: Original present |
|  | H | APS sensor (APS-1) | 1: Original present |
| [9] | - | SCM board input 24V check | Output value is displayed with 8 bits. |
| [0] | - | - |  |

[FULL COLOR]key: ON, [AUTO COLOR]key: OFF, [ENERGY SAVER]key: OFF

| Digital key | Icon |  | Condition |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[1]$ | - | Auto-toner sensor Y | Sensor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |  |
| $[2]$ | - | Auto-toner sensor M | Sensor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |  |
| $[3]$ | - | Auto-toner sensor C | Sensor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |  |
| $[4]$ | - | Auto-toner sensor K | Sensor output value is displayed with 8 bits. |  |
| $[5]$ | - |  |  |  |
| $[6]$ | - |  | - |  |
| $[7]$ | - |  | - |  |
| $[8]$ | - |  | - |  |
| $[9]$ | - |  | - |  |
| $[0]$ | - |  |  |  |

<Operation procedure>


## POWER OFF/ON

 (Exit)Note: After initialization, the copier goes into the test mode.


Note: When icon is displayed with white letter on black background on the control panel, it indicates the value is 1 .

## 1. 2. 2 Output check (Test mode 03)

Output signal status can be checked by entering the following code in the test mode 03.

| Code | Function | Code | Function | Procedure |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 150 | All output OFF | 1 |
| 101 | Drum motor and transfer belt motor rotation with normal printing speed ON | 151 | Code No. 101 function OFF | 1 |
| 102 | Drum motor and transfer belt motor rotation with OHP printing speed (low) ON | 152 | Code No. 102 function OFF | 1 |
| 103 | Paper feed motor ON | 153 | Code No. 103 function OFF | 1 |
| 104 | Fuser motor ON | 154 | Code No. 104 function OFF | 1 |
| 105 | Developer motor (color mode) ON | 155 | Code No. 105 function OFF | 1 |
| 106 | Developer motor (black mode) ON | 156 | Code No. 106 function OFF | 1 |
| 107 | Registration motor ON | 157 | Code No. 107 function OFF | 1 |
| 108 | Used toner transport motor ON | 158 | Code No. 108 function OFF | 1 |
| 109 | ADU motor ON | 159 | Code No. 109 function OFF | 1 |
| 110 | Toner motor Y ON | 160 | Code No. 110 function OFF | 1 |
| 111 | Toner motor M ON | 161 | Code No. 111 function OFF | 1 |
| 112 | Toner motor C ON | 162 | Code No. 112 function OFF | 1 |
| 113 | Toner motor K ON | 163 | Code No. 113 function OFF | 1 |
| 114 | Image quality sensor shutter solenoid ON | 164 | Code No. 114 function OFF | 1 |
| 130 | Polygonal motor standby speed ON | 180 | Code No. 130 function OFF | 1 |
| 131 | Polygonal motor normal speed ON | 181 | Code No. 131 function OFF | 1 |
| 132 | Image quality sensor LED ON | 182 | Code No. 132 function OFF | 1 |
| 133 | Color registration sensor LED (front) ON | 183 | Code No. 133 function OFF | 1 |
| 134 | Color registration sensor LED (rear) ON | 184 | Code No. 134 function OFF | 1 |
| 135 | Image quality sensor mode switching ON (Black mode) | 185 | Code No.135function OFF (Color mode) | 1 |
| 201 | 1st cassette feed clutch ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 202 | 2nd cassette feed clutch ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 203 | 3rd cassette feed clutch ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 204 | 4th cassette feed clutch ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 205 | Feed path clutch ON/OFF |  |  | 2 |
| 206 | Bypass feed clutch ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 207 | 1st cassette tray-up motor ON (tray goes up) |  |  | 2 |
| 208 | 2nd cassette tray-up motor ON (tray goes up) |  |  | 2 |
| 209 | 3rd cassette tray-up motor ON (tray goes up) |  |  | 2 |
| 210 | 4th cassette tray-up motor ON (tray goes up) |  |  | 2 |
| 211 | Paper-exit gate solenoid ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |
| 213 | Ozone exhaust fan motor ON/OFF |  |  | 3 |


| Code | Function | Procedure |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 214 | Fuser exhaust fan motor Low/High speed | 3 |
| 215 | PC board cooling fan motor ON/OFF | 3 |
| 216 | Wire cleaner drive motor Y CW/CCW (continuous reciprocating) | 2 |
| 217 | Wire cleaner drive motor M CW/CCW (continuous reciprocating) | 2 |
| 218 | Wire cleaner drive motor C CW/CCW (continuous reciprocating) | 2 |
| 219 | Wire cleaner drive motor K CW/CCW (continuous reciprocating) | 2 |
| 220 | Transfer belt contact/release motor CW/CCW (continuous reciprocating) | 2 |
| 223 | LCF paper feed motor ON/OFF | 3 |
| 224 | LCF tray motor ON/OFF | 2 |
| 225 | ADU feed clutch ON/OFF | 3 |
| 226 | ADU gate solenoid ON/OFF | 3 |
| 227 | ADU side motor ON/OFF | 3 |
| 228 | ADU end motor ON/OFF | 3 |
| 229 | Pre-feed clutch (front) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 230 | Pre-feed clutch (rear) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 235 | Main chargerY ON/OFF | 3 |
| 236 | Main charger M ON/OFF | 3 |
| 237 | Main charger C ON/OFF | 3 |
| 238 | Main charger K ON/OFF | 3 |
| 243 | Developer bias (Y) DC(-) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 244 | Developer bias (M) DC(-) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 245 | Developer bias (C) DC(-) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 246 | Developer bias (K) DC(-) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 247 | Developer bias (Y) AC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 248 | Developer bias (M) AC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 249 | Developer bias (C) AC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 250 | Developer bias (K) AC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 251 | Cleaning blade bias (Y) DC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 252 | Cleaning blade bias (M) DC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 253 | Cleaning blade bias (C) DC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 254 | Cleaning blade bias (K) DC ON/OFF | 3 |
| 255 | Transfer roller bias (Y) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 256 | Transfer roller bias (M) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 257 | Transfer roller bias (C) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 258 | Transfer roller bias (K) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 259 | Suction charger ON/OFF | 3 |
| 260 | Discharge lamp Y ON/OFF | 3 |
| 261 | Discharge lamp M ON/OFF | 3 |
| 262 | Discharge lamp C ON/OFF | 3 |


| Code | Function | Procedure |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 263 | Discharge lamp K ON/OFF | 3 |
| 280 | Laser (Y) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 281 | Laser (M) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 282 | Laser (C) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 283 | Laser (K) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 300 | Carriage fan motor rotation at standby speed (high speed) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 301 | Carriage fan motor rotation at normal speed (low speed) ON/OFF | 3 |
| 302 | SCM fan motor Low/High speed | 3 |
| 304 | Scanner exposure lamp ON/OFF | 4 |
| 331 | ADF pick-up roller rotation ON/OFF | 3 |
| 332 | ADF aligning roller rotation ON/OFF | 3 |
| 333 | ADF transport belt CW rotation ON/OFF | 3 |
| 334 | ADF transport belt CCW rotation ON/OFF | 3 |
| 351 | Scan motor (carriages reciprocating once) | 2 |
| 352 | Document motor (indicator reciprocating once) | 2 |

<Operation procedure>

## Procedure 1



Procedure 2


Procedure 3


Procedure 4


## 1. 2. 3 Test print mode (04)

In the test print mode (04), you can print each test pattern by entering its corresponding code as follows.

| Code | Types of test pattern | Remarks | Papersize |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 14 | Gamma table check pattern | To check gradation | A3/LD |
| 204 | Grid pattern (Printer reproduction ratio/Registration <br> adjustment pattern) | Pattern width: 1 dot, Pitch: 5 mm <br> (same as the grid pattern printed <br> by adjustment mode $\rightarrow$ [1] <br> $\rightarrow$ [PRINTER/NETWORK]) | A3/LD |
| 219 | $6 \%$ test pattern |  | A4/LT |
| 220 | $8 \%$ test pattern | Pattern width: 10 mm, <br> 32 gradation steps | A3/LD |
| 230 | Gradation check pattern (2 pixels standard) | Pattern width: 10 mm, <br> 32 gradation steps |  |
| 231 | Gradation check pattern (3 pixels standard) |  | A3/LD |
| 234 | Halftone | To check image quality control | A3/LD |
| 270 | Image quality control test patten |  | A3/LD |

Note: Full color (YMCK) mode is not available in 230, 231 and 234.
<Operation procedure>


Notes:1. When an error has occurred, it is indicated, but the recovery operation is not performed. So, turn the power OFF and then back ON to clear the error.
2. During test printing, when "Wait adding toner" is displayed, the [STOP] key is disabled.

### 1.2.4 Adjustment mode (05)

In the adjustment mode (05), the following adjustment items can be corrected, changed or checked.
*The numbers after hyphens under the code columns stand for sub-codes.

| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 104 | Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary-scanning direction (scanner section) |  | 128 | 1~255 | When the value increases by 1 , the reproduction ratio in the secondary-scanning direction (vertical paper feeding direction) increases by approx. 0.1522\%. | 1 |
| 105 | Image location adjustment of secondary-scanning direction (scanner section) |  | 128 | 85~171 | When the value increases by 1 , the image shifts by approx. 0.1213 mm toward the trailing edge of the paper. | 1 |
| 106 | Image location adjustment of prima-ry-scanning direction (scanner section) | For regular copy mode | 180 | 5~251 | When the value increases by 1 , the image shifts by approx. 0.042 mm toward the front side of the paper (machine). | 1 |
| 108 |  | For full image copy mode | 133 | 5~251 | When you enter a value, which is 47 steps (equivalent to 2 mm ) smaller than the set value of [106], the rear original edge and the front copy edge match (0.042mm/step). | 1 |
| 135 | RADF original stop position | single-sided | 8 | 0~15 | Changes the position where the original stops. When the value increases by 1 , the original stop position shifts by 1 mm away from the original scale. | 1 |
| 136 |  | two-sided | 8 | 0~15 |  | 1 |
| 137 | RADF sensor automatic adjustment and EEPROM initialization |  | - | - | By pressing the START key, WAIT is displayed while the automatic adjustment is performed. This adjustment should be carried out when EEPROM, RADF PC board or sensors are replaced. | 6 |
| 200 | Automatic filling of developer material and automatic adjustment of the autotoner sensor | All (Y, M, C, K) | - | 0~255 | Fills the developer from the developer cartridge (about 3 min.) and then adjusts the auto-toner sensor output to set in the range of $3.50 \sim 4.50 \mathrm{~V}$ (about 2 min .). <br> (As the value increases, the sensor output increases correspondingly.) | 5 |
| 201 |  | Y | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 202 |  | M | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 203 |  | C | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 204 |  | K | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 213 | Display of auto-toner sensor output |  | 0 | 0~1023 | Displays the auto-toner sensor output value. | 10 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 221 | Automatic filling of developer material and automatic adjustment of the auto toner sensor |  | M, C) | - | 0~255 | Fills the developer from the developer cartridge (about 3 min .) and then adjusts the auto-toner sensor output to set in the range of $3.50 \sim 4.50 \mathrm{~V}$ (about 2 min .). <br> (As the value increases, the sensor output increases correspondingly.) | 5 |
| 223 | Developer bias DC (-) output adjustment |  | Y | 136 | 0~255 | As the value increases, the transformer output increases. The adjustment value becomes effective only when the setting mode (08-400,401,409) is 0 (disabled). | 1 |
| 224 |  |  | M | 136 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 225 |  |  | C | 136 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 226 |  |  | K | 136 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 241 | Main charger grid bias output adjustment |  | Y | 120 | 0~255 | As the value increases, the transformer output increases. The adjustment value becomes effective only when the setting mode ( $08-400,401,409$ ) is 0 (disabled). | 1 |
| 242 |  |  | M | 120 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 243 |  |  | C | 120 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 244 |  |  | K | 120 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 245 | Automatic adjustment of the autotoner sensor | All (Y,M,C,K) |  | - | 0~255 | Auto-toner sensor output is adjusted to set the output range within 3.50~ 4.50 V automatically (about 2 min .). As the value increases, the sensor ouptut increases correspondingly.) (No developer filling is carried out.) | 5 |
| 246 |  | Y |  | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 247 |  | M |  | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 248 |  | C |  | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 249 |  | K |  | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 250 |  | Color (Y,M,C) |  | - | 0~255 |  | 5 |
| 252-0 | Main charger bias output voltage 1 (lower) |  | Y | 250 | 0~999 | Actual output voltage of main charger grid bias. After replacing the main highvoltage transformer, enter the value according to the supplementary data sheet. | 4 |
| 252-1 |  |  | M | 250 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 252-2 |  |  | C | 250 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 252-3 |  |  | K | 250 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 253-0 | Main charger bias output voltage 2 (upper) |  | Y | 900 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 253-1 |  |  | M | 900 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 253-2 |  |  | C | 900 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 253-3 |  |  | K | 900 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 257-0 | Developer bias DC(-) output voltage 1 (lower) |  | Y | 100 | 0~999 | Actual output voltage of the developer bias. After replacing the main highvoltage transformer, enter the value according to the supplementary data sheet. | 4 |
| 257-1 |  |  | M | 100 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 257-2 |  |  | C | 100 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 257-3 |  |  | K | 100 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 258-0 | Developer bias DC(-) output voltage 2 (upper) |  | Y | 700 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 258-1 |  |  | M | 700 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 258-2 |  |  | C | 700 | 0~999 |  | 4 |
| 258-3 |  |  | K | 700 | 0~999 |  | 4 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 318 | Transfer bias output adjustment (Full color) | Normal paper mode / Thin paper mode | Y | 59 | 0~255 | The bias value of the transfer roller is set. The higher the value, the larger the transformer output becomes. The adjustment value becomes effective only when the setting mode $(08-400,401,409)$ is 0 (disabled). | 1 |
| 319 |  |  | M | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 320 |  |  | C | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 321 |  |  | K | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 326 |  | Thick paper 1 mode | Y | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 327 |  |  | M | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 328 |  |  | C | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 329 |  |  | K | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 330 |  | OHP mode | Y | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 331 |  |  | M | 99 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 332 |  |  | C | 109 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 333 |  |  | K | 139 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 334 |  | Thick paper 2 mode | Y | 69 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 335 |  |  | M | 69 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 336 |  |  | C | 69 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 337 |  |  | K | 69 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 356-0 | Transfer bias offset adjustment | Normal paper mode / Thin paper mode | Y | 4 | 0~8 | The offset value of the transfer bias is set.$\begin{array}{lll} 0:-400 \mathrm{~V} & 1:-300 \mathrm{~V} & 2:-200 \mathrm{~V} \\ 3:-100 \mathrm{~V} & 4: 0 \mathrm{~V} & 5:+100 \mathrm{~V} \\ 6:+200 \mathrm{~V} & 7:+300 \mathrm{~V} & 8:+400 \mathrm{~V} \end{array}$ | 4 |
| 356-1 |  |  | M | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 356-2 |  |  | C | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 356-3 |  |  | K | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 357-0 |  | Thick paper 1 mode | Y | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 357-1 |  |  | M | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 357-2 |  |  | C | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 357-3 |  |  | K | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 358-0 |  | Thick paper 2 mode | Y | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 358-1 |  |  | M | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 358-2 |  |  | C | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 358-3 |  |  | K | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 359-0 |  | Thick paper 3 mode | Y | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 359-1 |  |  | M | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 359-2 |  |  | C | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 359-3 |  |  | K | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 360-0 |  | OHP mode | Y | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 360-1 |  |  | M | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 360-2 |  |  | C | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |
| 360-3 |  |  | K | 4 | 0~8 |  | 4 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 361 | Transfer bias output adjustment (Black) | Normal paper mode / Thin paper mode |  | K | 49 | 0~255 | The bias value of the transfer roller is set. The higher the value, the larger the transformer output becomes. This adjustment value becomes effective only when the setting mode (08-400, 401, 409) is 0 (disabled). | 1 |
| 363 |  | Thick paper 1 mode |  | K | 49 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 364 |  | OHP mode |  | K | 69 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 365 |  | Thick paper 2 mode |  | K | 59 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 367-0 | Transfer bias output voltage 1 (lower) |  |  | Y | 589 | 0~5000 | Actual output voltage of the transfer roller bias. After replacing the transfer transformer, enter the value according to the supplementary data sheet. | 4 |
| 367-1 |  |  |  | M | 589 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 367-2 |  |  |  | C | 589 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 367-3 |  |  |  | K | 589 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 368-0 | Transfer bias output voltage 2 (upper) |  |  | Y | 3929 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 368-1 |  |  |  | M | 3929 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 368-2 |  |  |  | C | 3929 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 368-3 |  |  |  | K | 4715 | 0~5000 |  | 4 |
| 381 | Transfer bias output adjustment (Full color) |  | Thick paper 3 mode | Y | 89 | 0~255 | The bias value of the transfer roller is set. The higher the value, the larger the transformer output becomes. The adjustment value becomes effective only when the setting mode(08-400, 401, 409) is 0 (disabled). | 1 |
| 382 |  |  | M | 89 | 0~255 | 1 |  |
| 383 |  |  | C | 89 | 0~255 | 1 |  |
| 384 |  |  | K | 89 | 0~255 | 1 |  |
| 385 | Transfer bias output adjustment (Black) |  |  | Thick paper 3 mode | K | 79 |  | 0~255 | 1 |
| 391 | Automatic removing of developer material |  |  | Color (Y, M, C) |  | - | - | The developer material in the developer | 6 |
| 392 |  |  | K | - | - | unit is removed into the toner bag. | 6 |
| 400 | Reproduction ratio adjustment of primary-scanning direction <br> (Fine adjustment of polygonal motor rotation speed) |  |  |  | 1222 | $\begin{gathered} \hline 1209 \sim \\ 1235 \end{gathered}$ | When the value increases by 1 , the reproduction ratio in the primary-scanning direction (horizontal paper feeding direction) decreases by approx. 0.082\%. (If the values of this code 400 is changed, the values of code 05-401,402,403, 404,410 and 474 are optimized.) | 1 |
| 401 | Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary-scanning direction (Fine adjustment of drum motor/ transfer belt motor rotation speed) |  |  |  | 1787 | $\begin{gathered} \hline 1608 \sim \\ 1965 \end{gathered}$ | When the value increases by 1 , the reproduction ratio in the secondary-scanning direction (vertical paper feeding direction) decreases by approx. 0.074\%. (If the values of this code 401 is changed, the values of code 05-402,403,404, 410 and 474 are optimized.) | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 402 | Fine adjustment of fuser motor rotation speed |  |  | 3767 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 65535 \end{gathered}$ | When the value increases by 1 , the rotation speed of fuser motor decreases by $0.026 \%$. | 1 |
| 404 | Fine adjustment of feed motor rotation speed |  |  | 9832 | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0 \sim \\ 65535 \end{gathered}$ | When the value increases by 1 , the rotation speed of the paper feed motor decreases by $0.023 \%$. | 1 |
| 406 | Registration motor speed adjustment |  |  | - | - | The paper transport speed of registration roller in relation to the image printing speed is set at the optimum value. (If the value of this code 406 is performed, the values of the code 05-404 and 410 are optimized.) | 15 |
| 407 | Forced performing of color registration control |  |  | - | - | Performs the color registration control. | 6 |
| 408 | Correction of fuser motor speed (For the Thick paper 3 mode ) |  |  | 0 | 0~20 | In the thick paper 3 mode, when the value increases by 1 , the fuser motor rotation speed decreases by $0.026 \%$. | 1 |
| 410 | Fine adjustment of registration motor rotation speed |  |  | 2853 | $\begin{gathered} 2567 ~ \\ 3138 \end{gathered}$ | When the value increases by 1 , the registration motor rotation speed decreases by $0.035 \%$. (If the value of this code 410 is performed, the value of the code 05-404 is optimized. | 1 |
| 428 | Adjustment of image trailing edge margin |  |  | 160 | 0~255 | When the value increases by 1 , the margin at the trailing edge along the paper feeding direction becomes narrower by approx. 0.042 mm . | 1 |
| 439 | Paper aligning amount adjustment | 1st | Long | 20 | 0~40 | When the value increases by 1 , the aligning amount increases by about 0.8 mm . | 1 |
| 440 |  | cassette | Short | 25 | 0~40 |  | 1 |
| 441 |  | 2nd cassette | Long | 20 | 0~40 |  | 1 |
| 442 |  |  | Short | 25 | 0~40 |  | 1 |
| 443 |  | 3rd cassette | Long | 20 | 0~40 | Notes: | 1 |
| 444 |  |  | Short | 25 | 0~40 | Long (= Long size paper) | 1 |
| 445 |  | 4th cassette | Long | 20 | 0~40 | Paper length 330 mm or longer | 1 |
| 446 |  |  | Short | 25 | 0~40 | (A3/LD/A3 wide/FULL BLEED) | 1 |
| 447 |  | ADU | Long | 20 | 0~40 | Short (= Short size paper) : | 1 |
| 448 |  |  | Short | 25 | 0~40 | Paper length $220 \mathrm{~mm} \sim 329 \mathrm{~mm}$ | 1 |
| 449 |  | LCF |  | 25 | 0~40 |  | 1 |
| 450 |  | Bypass feed |  | 35 | 0~40 |  | 1 |
| 451 |  | Thick paper 2 |  | 40 | 0~50 |  | 1 |
| 452 |  | Thick paper 3 |  | 40 | 0~50 |  | 1 |



| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 550 | Density adjustment "Manual density" fine adjustment (center setting) | Full color | Text/Photo | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, images made at center density become darker. | 1 |
| 551 |  |  | Text | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 552 |  |  | Printedimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 553 |  |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 554 |  |  | Map | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 555 |  | Black | Text/Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 556 |  |  | Text | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 557 |  |  | Printedimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 558 |  |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 559 |  |  | Map | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 560 | Density adjustment "Manual density" fine adjustment (darker setting) | Full color | Text/Photo | 20 | 0~255 | When the value increases, images made at the "dark" side become darker. | 1 |
| 561 |  |  | Text | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 562 |  |  | Printedimage | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 563 |  |  | Photo | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 564 |  |  | Map | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 565 |  | Black | Text/Photo | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 566 |  |  | Text | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 567 |  |  | Printedimage | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 568 |  |  | Photo | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 569 |  |  | Map | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 570 | Density adjustment "Manual density" fine adjustment (lighter setting) | Full color | Text/Photo | 20 | 0~255 | When the value increases, images made at the "light" side become lighter. | 1 |
| 571 |  |  | Text | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 572 |  |  | Printedimage | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 573 |  |  | Photo | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 574 |  |  | Map | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 575 |  | Black | Text/Photo | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 576 |  |  | Text | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 577 |  |  | Printedimage | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 578 |  |  | Photo | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 579 |  |  | Map | 20 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 580 | Density adjustment <br> "Automatic density" fine adjustment | Full color | Text/Photo | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, images become darker. | 1 |
| 581 |  |  | Text | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 582 |  |  | Printedimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 583 |  |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 584 |  |  | Map | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 585 |  | Black | Text/Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 586 |  |  | Text | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 587 |  |  | Printedimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 588 |  |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 589 |  |  | Map | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 612 | Adjustment of maximum toner amount | Normal paper |  | 255 | 0~255 | When the value decreases, images become lighter. <br> Note: When the value increases, image offset may occur. | 1 |
| 613 |  |  | Thick paper 1 | 249 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 614 |  |  | Thick paper 2 | 237 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 615 |  |  | Thick paper 3 | 237 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 616 |  |  | OHP | 230 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 617 |  |  | Thin paper | 255 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 643 | Automatic gamma adjustment |  |  | - | - | Adjusts the gradation reproduction for each color Y, M, C, K. | 13 |
| 675 | Judgment threshold for ACS |  |  | 104 | 0~255 | When the value increases, originals tend to be judged as monochrome, and when the value decreases, they tend to be judged as color in Auto color mode. | 1 |
| 678 | Al mode setting | Discrimination setting |  | 0 | 0~4 | Sets the operation mode of discrimination processing in AI mode. <br> 0: Standard (for regular) <br> 1: Photograph priority <br> 2: Only judgment of original type <br> 3: Only judgment of original type with photograph priority <br> 4: Discrimination is not performed in Al mode. | 1 |
| 682 |  | Time-out setting |  | 63 | 11~99 | Sets the maximum amount of processing time for image discrimination. <br> Two digits are designated: the 1st digit is for setting A3/LD original and the 2nd digit is for setting A4/LT original. (unit: second) | 1 |
| 698 | Offset <br> adjustment for background processing (Adjustment of background density) | Full color | Text/Photo | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, the background becomes darker. | 1 |
| 699 |  |  | Text | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 700 |  |  | Printedimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 701 |  |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 702 |  |  | Map | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 703 |  | Black | Text/Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 704 |  |  | Text | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 705 |  |  | Printedimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 706 |  |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 707 |  |  | Map | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Proce- <br> dure |
| 708 | Offset adjustment for background processing (Adjustment of text density) | Full color |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, the text becomes darker. | 1 |
| 709 |  |  |  | ext | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 710 |  |  | Print | dimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 711 |  |  |  | oto | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 712 |  |  |  | ap | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 713 |  | Black |  | Photo | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 714 |  |  |  | ext | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 715 |  |  | Print | dimage | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 716 |  |  |  | oto | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 717 |  |  |  | ap | 128 | 0~255 |  | 1 |
| 737 | Sharpness adjustment | Full color |  | Photo | 0 | 0~31 | When the value increases, the image becomes sharper. When the value decreases, the image becomes softer. The smaller the value, the fewer the moire becomes. <br> *The default value 0 is equivalent to 16 (center value). | 1 |
| 738 |  |  |  | ext | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 739 |  |  | Print | dimage | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 740 |  |  |  | hoto | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 741 |  |  |  | ap | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 742 |  | Black |  | Photo | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 743 |  |  |  | ext | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 744 |  |  | Print | dimage | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 745 |  |  |  | oto | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 746 |  |  |  | ap | 0 | 0~31 |  | 1 |
| 779-0 | Color balance adjustment (Y) | Text/ Photo |  | L | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, the target color, the original mode and the density area become darker. | 4 |
| 779-1 |  |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 779-2 |  |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 780-0 |  | Text |  | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 780-1 |  |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 | Notes: <br> L: Low density area <br> M: Medium density area <br> H: High density area | 4 |
| 780-2 |  |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 781-0 |  | Printed image |  | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 781-1 |  |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 781-2 |  |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 782-0 |  | Photo |  | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 782-1 |  |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 782-2 |  |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 783-0 |  | Map |  | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 783-1 |  |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 783-2 |  |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 784-0 | Color balance adjustment <br> (M) | Text/ Photo | L | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, the target color, the original mode and the density area become darker. <br> Notes: <br> L: Low density area <br> M: Medium density area <br> H: High density area | 4 |
| 784-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 784-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 785-0 |  | Text | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 785-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 785-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 786-0 |  | Printed image | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 786-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 786-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 787-0 |  | Photo | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 787-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 787-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 788-0 |  | Map | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 788-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 788-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 789-0 | Color balance adjustment (C) | Text/ Photo | L | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, the target color, the original mode and the density area become darker. <br> Notes: <br> L: Low density area <br> M: Medium density area <br> H: High density area | 4 |
| 789-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 789-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 790-0 |  | Text | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 790-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 790-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 791-0 |  | Printed image | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 791-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 791-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 792-0 |  | Photo | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 792-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 792-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 793-0 |  | Map | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 793-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 793-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |


| Adjustment mode (05) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Description/Mode |  |  | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> Value | Contents | Procedure |
| 794-0 | Color balance adjustment (K) | Text/ <br> Photo | L | 128 | 0~255 | When the value increases, the target color, the original mode and the density area become darker. <br> Notes: <br> L: Low density area <br> M: Medium density area <br> H: High density area | 4 |
| 794-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 794-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 795-0 |  | Text | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 795-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 795-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 796-0 |  | Printed image | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 796-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 796-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 797-0 |  | Photo | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 797-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 797-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 798-0 |  | Map | L | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 798-1 |  |  | M | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 798-2 |  |  | H | 128 | 0~255 |  | 4 |
| 817 | Output value display of image quality sensor | When the light source is OFF |  | - | 0~1023 | Displays the output value of image quality sensor when the sensor light source is OFF. | 2 |
| 818 |  | Transfer belt surface |  | - | 0~1023 | Displays the output value of image quality sensor (when there is no test pattern) on the transfer belt. | 2 |
| 819 |  | Low-density pattern |  | - | 0~1023 | Displays the output value of image quality sensor when a low-density test pattern is written. | 10 |
| 820 |  | High-density pattern |  | - | 0~1023 | Displays the output value of image quality sensor when a high-density test pattern is written. | 10 |
| 821 | Light amount adjustment results of image quality sensor |  |  | - | 0~255 | This sensor's LED light amount adjustment value is the reference value for setting the reflected light amount from the belt surface. | 2 |
| 822 | Output value display of image quality sensor | Medium-density pattern |  | - | 0~1023 | Displays the output value of image quality sensor when a medium-density test pattern is written. | 10 |
| 878 | Forced performing of image quality control |  |  | - | - | Performs the image quality control. | 6 |
| 879 | Automatic initialization of image quality control |  |  | - | - | Performs the image quality control and restore the initial value. | 6 |
| 912-0 | Magazine sort/ fine adjustment of folding and stapling position | A4-R/LT-R |  | 0 | -14~14 | When the value increases by 1 , the folding and stapling position shift by approx. 0.25 mm toward the right page. | 4 |
| 912-1 |  | B4 |  | 0 | -14~14 |  | 4 |
| 912-2 |  | A3/LD |  | 0 | -14~14 |  | 4 |

<Operation procedure>

## Procedure 1



Procedure 2


Procedure 4


Procedure 5


## Procedure 6



Procedure 10


Procedure 13


Procedure 15


### 1.2.5 Setting mode (08)

The following items can be set or changed in this mode (08).

| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 200 | Date and time setting | - | 13 digits | Year/month/date/day/hour/minute/second Example: 99:08:07:5:11:30:48 | 1 |
| 201 | Destination selection | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { EUR:0 } \\ & \text { UC:1 } \\ & \text { JPN:2 } \end{aligned}$ | 0~2 | 0: Europe (A4/A3/Folio) <br> 1: USA/Canada (Letter/Ledger) <br> 2: Japan (A4/B4) | 1 |
| 202 | Externally installed copy counter/controller device | 0 | 0~3 | 0: No external copy counter/controller device <br> 1: Coin controller 2: Copy key card <br> 3: Key copy counter | 1 |
| 204 | Auto-clear timer setting | 3 | 0 ~ 10 | When the [START] key is not pressed, the time lag before automatic clearing works to clear settings to defaults. <br> 0: Disabled 1 to 10: Set number x 15 seconds | 1 |
| 205 | Energy saver timer setting | 0 | 0~15 | Timer for switching to Energy Saver mode se lected in 08-618 when the copier is not used. <br> 0 : Disabled 1:30sec. 2: 60sec. <br> 3: 90 sec . 4: 120sec. 5: 150 sec . <br> 6: 3 min 7: 4 min 8: $5 \min$ 9: 7 min <br> 10: 10 min 11: $15 \min$ 12: 20 min <br> 13: 30 min 14: 45 min 15: 60 min | 1 |
| 206 | Automatic shutoff timer setting | 20 | 0~20 | Timer for switching to automatic shutoff state when the copier is not used. US Energy Star Compliance <br> 0: 3 min 1: 5 min 2: $10 \min \quad 3: 15 \min$ <br> 4: $20 \min$ 5: $25 \min$ 6: 30 min <br> 7: 40min 8: 50 min 9: 60min <br> 10: 70 min 11: 80 min 12: 90 min <br> 13: 100 min 14: 110 min 15: 120 min <br> 16: 150 min 17: 180 min 18: 210 min <br> 19: 240min 20: Disabled | 1 |
| 209 | Timer for print job start-up time from copy mode when autoclear is disabled | 1 | 1~10 | Sets the period the control panel is not operated when the data of the printer function is sent before the print job starts. This function is enabled when the auto-clear timer setting (08-204) is set as "0" (disabled). <br> (Set number x 15 seconds) | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 217 | Information of cassettes installation | 15 | 0~15 | 0: 4 cassettes $1: 2$ cassettes 2:3 cassettes <br> 3: 4 cassettes 4: 1 cassette(Forcibly <br> installing OFF) 15: Automatic | 1 |
| 220 | Selection of language (UI) on the display panel | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { EUR:0 } \\ \text { UC:6 } \\ \text { JPN:5 } \end{array}$ | $0 \sim 6$ | 0: Language 1 1: Language 2 <br> 2: Language 3 3: Language 4 <br> 4: Language 5 5: Language 6 <br> 6: Language 7  <br> Note: On the control panel,  <br> EUR, JPN: language 1 to 6 are selectable.  <br> UC: language 2 to 7 are selectable.  | 1 |
| 229 | Paper size setting/ bypass feed | - | 0~255 | Paper size is selected with the icons on the LCD. | 1 |
| 230 | Paper size setting/ 1st cassette | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { EUR:A4 } \\ \text { UC:LT } \\ \text { JPN:A4 } \end{array}$ | 0~255 | Paper size is selected with the icons on the LCD. | 1 |
| 231 | Paper size setting/ 2nd cassette | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { EUR:A3 } \\ \text { UC:LD } \\ \text { JPN:A3 } \end{array}$ | 0~255 | Paper size is selected with the icons on the LCD. | 1 |
| 232 | Paper size setting/ <br> 3rd cassette | EUR:A4-R UC:LT-R JPN:A4-R | 0~255 | Paper size is selected with the icons on the LCD. | 1 |
| 233 | Paper size setting/ <br> 4th cassette | EUR:A4 <br> UC:LG <br> JPN:B4 | 0~255 | Paper size is selected with the icons on the LCD. | 1 |
| 250 | Telephone number for "Call for service" | 0 | $14$ <br> digits | A telephone number up to 14 digits can be entered. Use the [HELP] key to enter hyphens (-). | 1 |
| 253 | Error history display | - | - | The last twenty error records are displayed. | 2 |
| 256 | Paper size setting/ LCF | $\begin{gathered} \text { EUR:A4 } \\ \text { UC:LT } \\ \text { JPN:A4 } \end{gathered}$ | 0~255 | Paper size is selected with the icons on the LCD. | 1 |
| 257 | Counter copy | - | 1~2 | 1: Copies the original counter value to the backup counter. <br> 2: Copies the backup counter value to the original counter. <br> ( - Page 1-48) | - |
| 267 | C9B/C9D Error history display | - | - | Displays the errror status of [C9B] and [C9D]. | 2 |
| 300 | Maximum number of copies allowed | 0 | 0~2 | 0:999 1:99 2:9 | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> value | Contents | Procedure |
| 302 | Resettable/original counter display | EUR: 3 <br> UC: 0 <br> JPN:0 | 0~3 | Sets if the resettable and original counters are displayed. <br> 0: Off 1: Resettable counter <br> 2: Original counter <br> 3: Resettable/original counter | 1 |
| 318 | Paper size (non-standard) feeding/widthwise direction | $\begin{aligned} & 432 / \\ & 279 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 148 ~ 457 / \\ 100 \sim 305 \end{array}$ |  | 4 |
| 360 | RADF switch back | 0 | 0 ~ 1 | Reversing the RADF transport belt during original transporting to align originals against the original scale. <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 361 | RADF <br> non-standard size original detection | 0 | 0 ~ 1 | When non-standard originals are used; <br> 0: Non-standard - Copier will stop and prompt operator to select copy size. <br> 1: Standard - Copier continues the current job without stopping | 1 |
| 390 | HDD error frequency counter | 0 | 0~32767 | Resets when formatting the HDD | 2 |
| 400 | Image quality control 1 | 1 | 0 ~ 1 | Auto-performing of image quality control <br> 0: Disabled <br> 1: Enabled (Performing 08-410,413) | 1 |
| 401 | Image quality control 2 | 1 | 0~1 | Auto-performing of image quality control <br> 0 : Disabled 1: Enabled <br> * If Image quality control $1(08-400)$ is 0 (Disabled), this value must be set to 0 (Disabled). | 1 |
| 402 | Image quality control 5 | 1 | 0~1 | Auto-performing of image quality control <br> 0 : Disabled 1: Enabled <br> * If both image quality control 2 (08-401) and 4 (08-411) are 0 (Disabled), this value must be set to 0 (Disabled). | 1 |
| 404 | Image quality control auto-start (relative humidity changes) | 1 | 0~1 | After the last image quality control, if the variation of the relative humidity inside the copier becomes larger than the set value in $08-405$, image quality control will be started when the printing begins. | 1 |
| 405 | Relative humidity difference setting at image qulity control auto-start | 1 | 0~1 | Sets the difference of the relative humidity for image quality control auto-start (relative humidity changes). <br> 6: $35 \%$ R. $H$. | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 406 | Image quality control auto-start (standby time) | 1 | 0 ~ 1 | After printing is finished and the time set in 08-452 has passed, image quality control will start when printing is started or the energy saver key is pressed. <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 407 | Image quality control auto-start (continuous printing) | 0 | 0 ~ 1 | During continuous printing, image quality control is started for every print volume set in 08-453. <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 408 | Image quality control auto-start (accumulated print volume) | 1 | 0~1 | When the accumulated print volume since the last image quality control has attained the amount set in 08-455, image quality control automatically starts after the current printing job. <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 409 | Image quality control 3 | 1 | 0~1 | Auto-performing of image quality control <br> 0: Disabled <br> 1: Enabled (Performing 08-410,413) | 1 |
| 410 | Drum surface potential correction control by drum temperature | 1 | 0~1 | Performing drum surface potential correction by drum thermistor detection temperature for image quality control. <br> 0 : Disabled 1: Enabled <br> * This selection is reflected if 'Image quality controls 1 and $3(08-400,409)$ ' have been set to 1 (Enabled). | 1 |
| 411 | Image quality control 4 | 1 | 0~1 | Auto-performing of image quality control <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled <br> * If image quality control 2 (08-401) is 0 (Disabled), this value must be set to 0 (Disabled). | 1 |
| 413 | Transfer roller bias correction control by temperature and humidity | 1 | 0~1 | Performing transfer roller bias correction by the temperature and humidity sensor for image quality control. <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled <br> * This selection is reflected if 'Image quality controls 1 and 3 (08-400,409)' have been set to 1 (Enabled). | 1 |
| 415 | Image quality control abnormal detection counter (Y) display/0 clearing | 0 | 0~16 | Accumulated total of CE1, CE2, CE4 (Max. 16 times) <br> * Enabled when 'Image quality control 3 (08-401)' is 1 (Enabled). | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 416 | Image quality control abnormal detection counter (M) display/0 clearing | 0 | 0~16 | Accumulated total of CE1, CE2, CE4 (Max. 16 times) <br> * Enabled when 'Image quality control 3 (08-401)' is 1 (Enabled). | 1 |
| 417 | Image quality control abnormal detection counter (C) display/0 clearing | 0 | $0 \sim 16$ | Accumulated total of CE1, CE2, CE4 (Max. 16 times) <br> * Enabled when 'Image quality control 3 (08-401)' is 1 (Enabled). | 1 |
| 418 | Image quality control abnormal detection counter (K) display/0 clearing | 0 | 0~16 | Accumulated total of CE1, CE2, CE4 (Max. 16 times) <br> * Enabled when 'Image quality control 3 (08-401)' is 1 (Enabled). | 1 |
| 452 | Image quality control autostart time setting (standby time) | 4 | 0~24 | Setting time (hour) of Image quality control auto-start (standby time) | 1 |
| 453 | Image quality control auto-start print volume setting (continuous printing) | 300 | 0~999 | Setting print volume (number of sheets) to automatically start Image quality control (continuous printing) | 1 |
| 455 | Image quality control auto-start print volume setting (accumulated print volume) | 10 | 0~30 | Setting print volume (set value $\times 100$ sheets) to automatically start Image quality control (accumulated print volume) | 1 |
| 480 | Paper source priority | 0 | 0 ~ 5 | 0: A4/LT 1: LCF 2: 1st cassette <br> 3: 2nd cassette <br> 4: 3rd cassette <br> 5: 4th cassette | 1 |
| 481 | Automatic paper source change | 1 | 0~2 | Sets if the cassette is automatically switched to the other cassette which has the paper of the same size when paper in the selected one has run out. <br> 0: Not switch <br> 1: Switch if paper of the same size and same direction presents (ex.A4 to A4). <br> 2: Switch if paper of the same size presents (different direction is acceptable) (ex. A4 to A4-R). | 1 |
| 485 | Polygonal motor rotation at standby | 0 | 0 ~ 1 | Setting of polygonal motor rotation at standby <br> 0: Low speed rotation (standby rotation) <br> 1: Stop | 1 |
| 501 | Original mode priority | 0 | 0 ~ 5 | 0: Text/photo 1: Text 2: Printed image <br> 3: Photo 4: Map 5:AI | 1 |
| 502 | Original mode priority (Black) | 0 | 0~5 | 0: Text/photo 1: Text 2: Printed image <br> 3: Photo 4: Map 5:AI | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 503 | Density mode priority | 1 | 0 ~ 1 | 0: Automatic 1: Manual (Center) | 1 |
| 504 | Color mode priority | 2 | 0~2 | 0: Auto color 1: Black 2: Full color | 1 |
| 600 | Access code mode | 0 | 0~2 | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled <br> 2: Department management | 1 |
| 602 | Display setting for Automatic energy saver / Automatic shutoff | $\begin{aligned} & \text { EUR:1 } \\ & \text { UC:1 } \\ & \text { JPN:0 } \end{aligned}$ | 0 ~ 1 | 0: Display OFF 1: Display ON | 1 |
| 603 | Automatic duplexing mode priority (when using RADF) | 0 | 0~3 | 0: Disabled <br> 1: Single-sided to duplexed <br> 2: Two-sided to duplexed 3: User selection | 1 |
| 604 | APS (Automatic Paper Selec tion) / AMS (Automatic Magnification Selection) mode priority | 0 | 0~2 | 0: APS mode <br> 1: AMS mode <br> 2: None | 1 |
| 607 | RADF feeding mode priority | 0 | 0~1 | 0: Continuous feeding by START key 1: SADF (Automatic feeding by setting original) | 1 |
| 609 | Original mode priority (scanning) | 2 | $2 \sim 3$ | The initial value of the original mode in the scan function is set. <br> 2: Printed image <br> 3: Photo | 1 |
| 610 | Color mode priority (scanning) | 2 | 1~2 | The initial value of the color mode in the scan function is set. <br> 1: Gray scale <br> 2: Full color | 1 |
| 611 | Book duplexed copy original priority | 0 | 0~1 | 0 : Left page to right page <br> 1: Right page to left page | 1 |
| 612 | Image repeat gap | 5 | 0~10 | Set value $\times 1 \mathrm{~mm}$ | 1 |
| 613 | [OTHER KEY] paper size setting | EUR:13 <br> UC:12 <br> JPN:3 | 0~13 | 0: A3 1: A4 2: A4-R 3: A5-R <br> 4: B4    <br> 5: B5 6: B5-R 7: LT 8: LT-R <br> 10: LD    <br> 13: FOLIO 11: ST 12: COMPUTER    | 1 |
| 617 | RADF image shifting | 0 | 0~1 | Sets the datum position of image when the RADF is used. <br> 0 : Without shift (center) 1: With shift (corner) | 1 |
| 618 | Energy saver mode | 0 | 0~1 | 0: Energy saver mode with priority aim of energy saving (Refer to 08-712) <br> 1: Energy saver mode with priority aim of returning to standby (Refer to 08-713) | 1 |
| 619 | Initial value setting of book center erase margin | 10 | 0~50 | Set value $\times 1 \mathrm{~mm}$ | 1 |
| 620 | APS forced start setting / selection | 0 | 0~2 | 0: Single press of key <br> 1: Double press of key <br> 2: Disabled | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accepttable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 622 | Reading resolution initial value setting (scanning) | 2 | 0~2 | The initial value of the read resolution in the scan function is set. $0: 600 \mathrm{dpi} \quad \text { 1: } 300 \mathrm{dpi} \quad 2: 150 \mathrm{dpi}$ | 1 |
| 623 | Permanent file format initial value setting (scanning) | 1 | 0~1 | When the data read by the scan function is saved into the mail box, the initial value of the file format is set. <br> 0: PDF 1:JPEG 2:TIFF | 1 |
| 630 | Automatic paper source change from bypass tray | 0 | $0 \sim 1$ | Sets if the paper source is switched to the other casssette which has the paper of the same size when the paper on the bypass tray has run out. <br> 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 631 | Transfer belt release control in the auto color mode | 0 | 0~1 | Sets if the transfer belt is released when the original is judged as black-and-white. <br> 0 : Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 632 | Autoamtic calibration disclosure level | 1 | 0~2 | Sets the disclosing level of automatic calibration. <br> 0: Service technician <br> 1: Administrator 2: User | 1 |
| 634 | Initial value setting of repeat frequency in the image repeat mode | 2 | $2 \sim 8$ | Set value = Repeat frequency | 1 |
| 635 | RADF mixed originals mode setting priority | 0 | $0 \sim 1$ | 0: Same originai size 1: Mixed original size | 1 |
| 640 | Date printing format | $\begin{array}{\|l} \mid \text { EUR:1 } \\ \text { UC:2 } \\ \text { JPN:0 } \end{array}$ | 0~2 | Sets the date printing format at the list printing. <br> 0:YYYY.MM.DD 1:DD.MM.YYYY <br> 2: MM.DD.YYYY | 1 |
| 641 | Automatic sorting mode priority (when using RADF) | 2 | 0~3 | 0: OFF 1:STAPLE 2:SORT <br> 3: GROUP | 1 |
| 642 | Sorter mode setting priority | 0 | 0~3 | 0: NON SORT 1: STAPLE 2: SORT 3: GROUP | 1 |
| 643 | E-mail transmission file format default setting | 1 | 0~2 | Sets the default file format when the image data read by the scan function is send by E-mail. <br> 0:PDF 1:JPEG 2:TIFF | 1 |
| 644 | E-mail transmission file attachment format default setting | 0 | 0~1 | Sets the default attachment format when the image data read by the scan function is send by E-mail. <br> 0 : Attachment 1: URL | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> value | Contents | Proce- <br> dure |
| 645 | Correction of reproduction ratio in the editing copy mode | 10 | 0 ~ 10 | Sets the reproduction ratio for $X$ in 1 copy (including magazine sort) to "Reproduction ratio $\times$ Correction ratio (followings)". | 1 |
| 646 | Image position in the editing copy mode | 0 | 0~1 | Sets the image pasting datum for each page in the X in 1 copy (including magazine sort). <br> 0 : Corner (upper left) 1: Center | 1 |
| 648 | Initializing of the finisher tray at Auto-clear | 0 | 0~1 | Sets whether the finisher tray moves to the 1-bin or not at Auto-clear 0: Not move <br> 1: Move | 1 |
| 650 | 2 in $1 / 4$ in 1 setting | 0 | 0~1 | 0: Horizontal writing original <br> 1: Vertical writing original | 1 |
| 653 | Copier administrator's password | 00000 | $\begin{gathered} 00000 ~ \\ 99999 \end{gathered}$ | Sets the password for administrator in the department management. | 1 |
| 681 | Cascade operation setting (printer) | 0 | 0 ~ 1 | 0: OFF 1:ON | 1 |
| 682 | Magazine sort setting | 0 | 0~1 | 0: Left page to right page <br> 1: Right page to left page | 1 |
| 683 | Cascade operation setting (copier) | 0 | 0~1 | 0: OFF 1: ON | 1 |
| 684 | Summer time function | 0 | 0~1 | 0: Not summer time <br> 1: Summer time | 2 |
| 690 | HDD formatting | - | 2 | 2: Normal format | 1 |
| 691 | HDD status display | - | 0~2 | 0: Not formatted <br> 2: Normal formatted | 2 |
| 693 | HDD standby mode | 1 | 0~10 | Sets the time lag before entering the HDD standby status. <br> * This value may need to be changed when the HDD is replaced since the characteristics of HDDs are different among makers. | 1 |
| 700 | Fuser error status counter | 0 | 0~9 | 0: Normal 1:[C41] error  <br> 2: Continuous $[C 41]$ error 3: -  <br> 4: $[C 43]$ error 5: $[C 44]$ error 6: $[C 42]$ error <br> 7: $[C 46]$ error 8: $[C 47]$ error 9: $[C 48]$ error   | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> value | Contents | Procedure |
| 712 | Fuser roller temperature for energy saver mode with priority aim of energy saving | 3 | 0~17 | $\begin{array}{llll} \text { 0: OFF } & \text { 1: } 60^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 2: 65^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 3: 70^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ \text { 4: } 75^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & \text { 5: } 80^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 6: 85^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 7: 90^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ \text { 8: } 95^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 9: 100^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 10: 105^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 11: 110^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ 12: 115^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 13: 120^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 14: 125^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\ 15: 130^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 16: 135^{\circ} \mathrm{C} & 17: 140^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \end{array}$ | 1 |
| 713 | Fuser roller temperature for energy saver mode with priority aim of returning to standby | 13 | 0~17 | 0: OFF $1: 60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $2: 65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 3: $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 4: $75^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 5: $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $6: 85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $7: 90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> 8: $95^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 9: $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $10: 105^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $11: 110^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> $12: 115^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $13: 120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $14: 125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  <br> 15: $130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $16: 135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $17: 140^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$  | 1 |
| 742 | Color registration control | 0 | $0 \sim 1$ | 0 : Automatic 1: Manual | 1 |
| 743 | Color registration control during the warming-up | 1 | 0~1 | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1 |
| 801 | Electronic total counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 99999999 \end{gathered}$ | Electronic counter counts the number of all printouts in the copier/printer function. (Code 08-802 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 802 | Large-size double count setting | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { EUR:0 } \\ \text { UC:1 } \\ \text { JPN:0 } \end{array}$ | 0~2 | 0 : Single count 1: Double count <br> 2: Single count (Double count for key copy counter) <br> *Double-counted paper size is set in code 08-888. Code 08-801, 813 and key copy counter reflect this setting. | 1 |
| 803 | Short-size counter display (card~A4-R/LT-R) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of short-sized printouts. | 1 |
| 804 | Long-size counter display (B4/LG~A3 wide/FULL BLEED) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of long-sized printouts. | 1 |
| 808 | Bypass counter display | 0 | 0 ~ 9999999 | Counts the number of printouts in the bypass feed. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 809 | LCF counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of printouts fed from the LCF. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 813 | Test print counter | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of printouts in the test print mode. (In the test print mode, only this counter is counted. Code 08-802 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 814 | Single-sided print counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of single-sided printouts. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 815 | Duplexed print counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of duplexd printouts. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 817 | Bypass jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the frequency of paper jam in bypass feeding. (Accumulated total of E12) | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> value | Contents | Procedure |
| 818 | Registration jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Jam on paper trailing edge at the registration roller (Accumulated total of E01) | 1 |
| 820 | Paper exit jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Frequency of paper exit jam (Accumulated total of E01, E02) | 1 |
| 822 | ADU counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of printouts fed from the ADU stack. <br> (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 824 | RADF original counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of originals fed from the RADF. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 825 | LCF jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 99999999 \end{array}$ | Frequency of paper jam when paper fed from the LCF (Accumulated total of E19, E21) | 1 |
| 826 | ADU paper-feed jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Frequency of paper jam after paper fed from the ADU stack (Accumulated total of E11, E54) | 1 |
| 827 | ADU stack jam counter | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Frequency of paper jam before paper reach the ADU stack (Accumulated total of E50, E51, E52) | 1 |
| 831 | Setting the target for the key copy counter | 1 | 0~3 | 1: Copier 2: Printer 3: Copier/Printer | 1 |
| 832 | 1st cassette counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts fed from the 1st cassette. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 833 | 2nd cassette counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of printouts fed from the 2nd cassette. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 834 | 3rd cassette counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts fed from the 3rd cassette. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 835 | 4th cassette counter dispaly | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 99999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts fed from the 4th cassette. (Single count for every paper size) | 1 |
| 836 | 1st cassette jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Frequency of paper jam when paper fed from the 1st cassette. (Accumulated total of E13, E22) | 1 |
| 837 | 2nd cassette jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 99999999 \end{array}$ | Frequency of paper jam when paper fed from the 2nd cassette. (Accumulated total of E14, E23) | 1 |
| 838 | 3rd cassette jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 99999999 \end{array}$ | Frequency of paper jam when paper fed from the 3rd cassette. (Accumulated total of E15, E24) | 1 |
| 839 | 4th cassette jam counter display | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Frequency of paper jam when paper fed from the 4th cassette. (Accumulated total of E16, E25) | 1 |
| 840 | Drum Y life counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed at drum Y. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> value | Contents | Proce- <br> dure |
| 841 | Drum M life counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed at drum M. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 842 | Drum C life counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed at drum C. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 843 | Drum K life counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed at drum K. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 844 | Developer Y counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed by developer Y. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 845 | Developer M counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed by developer M. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 846 | Developer C counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed by developer C. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 847 | Developer K counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of sheets printed by developer K. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 853 | Transfer belt unit counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printed sheets of the transfer belt unit. (Code $08-858$ and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 854 | Fuser unit counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{gathered}$ | Counts the number of printed sheets of the fuser unit. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 855 | Fuser oil roller counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printed sheets of thefuse r oil roller. (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 857 | Counter setting for general PM | Refer to Contents column | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | General maintenance counter value (number of printouts) <br> <Default value> <br> FC-210 EUR: 40000 UC: 40000 JPN: 0 <br> FC-310 EUR: 60000 UC: 60000 JPN: 0 | 1 |
| 858 | OHP/Thick paper double count | 1 | 0~1 | The counter for life management at the OHP/ <br> Thick paper mode; <br> 0 : Disabled - Counts up normally. <br> 1: Enabled - Counts up doubly. | 1 |
| 867 | Drum Y drive counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of color drum motor | 1 |
| 868 | Drum M drive counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of color drum motor | 1 |
| 869 | Drum C drive counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $0 \sim$ 999999 | Rotation time (sec.) of color drum motor | 1 |
| 870 | Drum K drive counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of black drum motor | 1 |
| 871 | Developer Y time counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of developer motor | 1 |
| 872 | Developer M time counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{array}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of developer motor | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Accep- <br> table <br> value | Contents | Procedure |
| 873 | Developer C time counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of developer motor | 1 |
| 874 | Developer K time counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of developer motor | 1 |
| 875 | Life counter large-size double count setting | 2 | 0 ~ 2 | 0: Disabled <br> 1: A3, LD, A3 wide, FULL BLEED <br> 2: A3, LD, A3 wide, FULL BLEED, B4, LG, FOLIO, COMP | 1 |
| 876 | Large-size counter display (Copier/Full color) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of large-size paper in the full color mode/copier function. (Code 08-802 and 888 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 877 | Small-size counter display (Copier/Full color) | 0 | $0 \sim$ 9999999 | Counts the number of printouts of small-size paper in the full color mode/copier function. (Code 08-888 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 878 | Large-size counter display (Copier/Black) | 0 | $0 \sim$ 9999999 | Counts the number of printouts of large-size paper in the black mode/copier function. (Code 08-802 and 888 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 879 | Small-size counter display (Copier/Black) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of small-size paper in the black mode/copier function. (Code 08-888 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 880 | Large-size counter display (Copier/Monocolor) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of large-size paper in the monocolor mode/copier function. (Code 08-802 and 888 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 881 | Small-size counter display (Copier/Monocolor) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of small-size paper in the monocolor mode/copier function. (Code 08-888 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 882 | Large-size counter display (Printer/Full color) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of large-size paper in the full color mode/printer function. (Code 08-802 and 888 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 883 | Small-size counter display (Printer/Full color) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of small-size paper in the full color mode/printer function. (Code 08-888 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 884 | Large-size counter display (Printer/Black) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of large-size paper in the black mode/printer function. (Code 08-802 and 888 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 885 | Small-size counter display (Printer/Black) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 9999999 \end{array}$ | Counts the number of printouts of small-size paper in the black mode/printer function. (Code 08-888 is reflected.) | 1 |
| 888 | Large-size setting | 2 | 1~2 | 1: A3/LD/A3 wide/FULL BLEED <br> 2: A3/LD/A3 wide/FULL BLEED/B4/LG/FOLIO /COMP | 1 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Procedure |
| 892 | Current value of general PM counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Total number of printouts (copier + printer) for life related (double count) (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 894 | Drum drive total counter for color PM life-time counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 999999999 \end{array}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of color drum motor | 1 |
| 896 | Current value of color PM counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Total number of full color and monocolor printouts for life related (double count) (Code 08-858 and 875 are reflected.) | 1 |
| 897 | Counter setting for color PM | Refer to Contents column | $\begin{gathered} 0 \sim \\ 999999 \end{gathered}$ | Color maintenance counter value(number of printouts)<Default value>FC-210 EUR: 40000 UC: 40000 JPN: 0 <br> FC-310 EUR: 60000 UC: 60000 JPN: 0 | 1 |
| 898 | Drum drive total counter for general PM life-time counter (display/0 clearing) | 0 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 0 \sim \\ 999999999 \end{array}$ | Rotation time (sec.) of black drum motor | 1 |
| 900 | Firmware version <br> (Basic section ROM) | - | - | EUR: T314SEXXX <br> UC: T314SUXXX <br> JPN: T314SJXXX <br> Other:T314SXXXX | 2 |
| 902 | Engine ROM version (LGC) | - | - | T314M-XX | 2 |
| 903 | Printer ROM version (IMC) | - | - | T314IMC-XX | 2 |
| 904 | Scanner ROM version (SCM) | - | - | T314SCM-XX | 2 |
| 905 | Macro-discrimination/ discrimination version (AI ROM) | - | - | T511MAC-XX | 2 |
| 920 | FROM basic section software version | - | - | VX.X/Y.Y | 2 |
| 921 | FROM program internal version | - | - | VXXX.YYY | 2 |
| 922 | UI data fixed section version | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ <br> (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 923 | UI data common section version | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VXXX.YYY Z } \\ & \text { (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) } \end{aligned}$ | 2 |
| 924 | UI data 1st language version in HDD | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ <br> (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 925 | UI data 2nd language version in HDD | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VXXX.YYY Z } \\ & \text { (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) } \end{aligned}$ | 2 |


| Setting mode (08) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Name | Default | Acceptable value | Contents | Proce dure |
| 926 | UI data 3rd language version in HDD | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ <br> (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 927 | UI data 4th language version in HDD | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VXXX.YYY Z } \\ & \text { (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) } \end{aligned}$ | 2 |
| 928 | UI data 5th language version in HDD | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ <br> (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 929 | UI data 6th language version in HDD | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 930 | UI data version in FROM displayed at power ON | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ <br> (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 931 | UI data 7th language version in HDD | - | - | VXXX.YYYZ <br> (Z: Language code, Page. 5-22) | 2 |
| 956 | [FUNCTION CLEAR] key setting when the default paper cassette is not set | 0 | 0~1 | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 1 |
| 957 | Icon for performing color registration control display | 0 | 0~1 | Displays the icon for performing the color registration control manually in the control panel display. <br> 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 1 |
| 962 | Finisher maximum number of sheets for stapling (short size) | 0 | 0~2 | 0: 50 sheets $\quad 1: 30$ sheets $\quad 2: 20$ sheets | 1 |
| 963 | Finisher maximum number of sheets for stapling (long size) | 0 | 0~2 | 0:30 sheets 1:15 sheets $\quad 2: 10$ sheets | 1 |
| 964 | Saddle stitcher maximum number of sheets for stapling | 0 | 0~1 | 0: 15 sheets $1: 8$ sheets <br> Note: The maximum number of the originals in the magazine sort mode is quadruple of the set number of the sheets. | 1 |
| 997 | Fee charging system counter display | - |  | Displays the fee charging related counter. | 2 |

<Operation procedure>

Procedure 1


Procedure 2


Procedure 4

<<Procedure to copy the counter value (08-257)>>

1. Turn ON the power while [0] and [8] are pressed simultaneously.
2. Enter the code [257] with the digital keys and press the [START] key (the following is displayed).

Note: Before performing the following operations, note the current counter values.

3. Enter the value " 1 " or " 2 " with the digital key and press the [START] key.

The value entered is displayed on the left of the "\%", and the [SET] key is displayed.
Note: The value can be erased by pressing the [CLEAR] key to change as long as the [START] key is not pressed. (The value on the left of the "\%" is reset to "0" by pressing the [CLEAR] key.)

- Enter "1" to copy the value of the original counter (LGC board) onto the value of the backup counter (SYS board).

- Enter "2" to copy the value of the backup counter (SYS board) onto the value of the original counter (LGC board).

4. Press the [SET] key to complete overwriting of the counter value.

Note: The screen returns to the code entry screen without copying (overwriting) the value when the [CANCEL] key is pressed.


## 2. ADJUSTMENT

### 2.1 Adjustment Order (Image Related Adjustment)

The diagram below explains the main procedures for image related adjustment. When replacing components which have other specified instructions for adjustment, those specified instructions are to be obeyed in priority.
In the following diagram, the solid lines with arrow lead to essential adjustments, while the dotted lines lead to adjustments to be performed if necessary.

*"Fine adjustment of each fuser and registration motor rotation speed" should be adjusted after printer section related adjustment.
( Page. 4-64~68)


| Image quality adjustment |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Items | Code in mode 05 |
| 2.6.2 Density adjustment | $550-589$ |
| 2.6.3 Color balance adjustment | $779-798$ |
| 2.6.4 Offset amount for processing background | $698-717$ |
| 2.6.5 Judgment threshold for ACS | 675 |
| 2.6.6 Al mode setting | 678,682 |
| 2.6.7 Sharpness adjustment | $737-746$ |

### 2.2 Adjustment of the Auto-Toner Sensor

### 2.2.1 Automatic removing of developer material

Notes: 1. This procedure is not necesary if developer material is not filled at the time of unpacking.
2. After the developer material has been removed, perform the maintenance of the processing unit (EPU) according to "3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)"
(1) Remove the toner cartridges.
(2) Remove the processing unit (EPU) from the copier. Turn the knob of the developer removal shutter, corresponding to the developer color to be removed, on the rear side of the unit (see the illustration below).

Note: If the knob cannot be turned normally, this message will be displayed during the developer removing: " [C33] Developer removal shutter abnormal".

(3) Return the processing unit (EPU) to the copier (be sure to fix it with screws) and then close the front cover.
(4) Turn ON the power while digital keys [0] and [5] are pressed simultaneously to dispaly the following screen.

(5) Enter a code with digital keys and press the [START] key. $\rightarrow$ The developer material is removed.

Code 391: All color developer materials (Y,M and C) are removed.
392 : Only the developer material K is removed.

Notes: 1. Fully confirm that the developer material to be removed corresponds to the code entered.
2. If you receive an error message upon completing step (5), the removal shutter of 1 or more developer unit(s) is closed. Open the appropriate shutter(s) and repeat step(5).
(6) After all developer materials are removed and "READY" is displayed, turn the power OFF. Time required for removing Color developer materials only : Approx. 6 min.

Developer material K only : Approx. 3 min.
(7) Open the front cover and take out the processing unit (EPU). Turn the knob of the developer removal shutter back to the center position.
(8) Return the processing unit (EPU) to the copier and close the front cover.

### 2.2.2 Initialization of the auto-toner senor

Note: This procedure shall be carried out when no developer material is filled in the processing unit (EPU). If material has been filled, follow the procedure of developer material removing in the previous heading.
(1) Open the front cover to install the developer cartridge(s) and then close the front cover.
(2) Turn ON the power while digital keys [0] and [5] are pressed simultaneously to dispaly the following screen.

| [0] [5] [POWER] | 100\% | A | A3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | TEST |  |  |

(3) Enter a code with digital keys and press the [START] key.

Code 200: All developer materials 204: Developer material K only
221 : Color developer materials only

$$
\text { (Code) } \rightarrow \text { [START] } \rightarrow \begin{array}{|lrl|}
\hline 100 \% & 200 & \text { A3 } \\
\cline { 2 - 3 } & \text { TEST MODE } & \\
\cline { 2 - 3 } & \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

(4) When the copier starts operating, a message "WAIT" is shown and the developer material filling starts (approx. 3 min.).
$\square$
(5) Approx. 2 minutes after the developer material filling is finished, the following display appears:

## Notes:

- The current sensor voltages (V) shown in © automatically change, gradually approaching the target values for adjustment reference voltages shown in (A).
- Values are displayed only for the developer materials being filled.
(6) In 30 to 60 seconds, the current sensor voltages (V) in © ${ }^{\text {B }}$ are converged to those in (A). The humidity shown in © disappears, and the sensor output control values (bit values) are shown instead.

| (B) | $\rightarrow$ | $\mathrm{Y}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ | $\mathrm{M}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ | $\mathrm{C}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ | $\mathrm{~K}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | $\mathrm{Y}: 140$ | $\mathrm{M}: 140$ | $\mathrm{C}: 140$ | $\mathrm{~K}: 140$ |  |
| (A) | $\rightarrow$ | $\mathrm{Y}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ | $\mathrm{M}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ | $\mathrm{C}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ | $\mathrm{~K}: 4.00 \mathrm{~V}$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |

Note: Be careful that the values in (A), © and © vary with humidity.
© : : Target value (V) for adjustment reference voltage

| Humidity (\%) | Y | M | C | K |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\sim 29.9$ | 3.60 | 3.60 | 3.50 | 3.50 |
| $30.0 \sim 44.9$ | 3.84 | 3.84 | 3.74 | 3.74 |
| $45.0 \sim 59.9$ | 4.00 | 4.00 | 4.00 | 4.00 |
| $60.0 \sim 74.9$ | 4.27 | 4.27 | 4.27 | 4.27 |
| $75.0 \sim$ | 4.50 | 4.50 | 4.50 | 4.50 |

(B) : Current sensor voltage (V)

| Humidity (\%) | Y | M | C | K |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\sim 29.9$ | $3.55 \sim 3.65$ | $3.55 \sim 3.65$ | $3.45 \sim 3.55$ | $3.45 \sim 3.55$ |
| $30.0 \sim 44.9$ | $3.79 \sim 3.89$ | $3.79 \sim 3.89$ | $3.69 \sim 3.79$ | $3.69 \sim 3.79$ |
| $45.0 \sim 59.9$ | $3.95 \sim 4.05$ | $3.95 \sim 4.05$ | $3.95 \sim 4.05$ | $3.95 \sim 4.05$ |
| $60.0 \sim 74.9$ | $4.22 \sim 4.32$ | $4.22 \sim 4.32$ | $4.22 \sim 4.32$ | $4.22 \sim 4.32$ |
| $75.0 \sim$ | $4.45 \sim 4.55$ | $4.45 \sim 4.55$ | $4.45 \sim 4.55$ | $4.45 \sim 4.55$ |

(7) If an adjustment error occurs, values of the color in problem displayed in (A), (B) or © are replaced with "***".
As for properly adjusted colors, press the [INTERRUPT] key to store their adjustment results in memory.
(8) Press the [INTERRUPT] key to store the adjustment results in memory. The screen returns to the initial display.

| [INTERRUPT] $\rightarrow$ | 100\% | A | A3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | TEST |  |  |

(9) Remove the developer cartridge(s).
(10) Install the toner cartridge(s).
<Troubleshooting in auto-toner sensor adjustment> (measures against adjustment error)

Check which color is in adjustment error.

Is the developer unit filled with developer material? (Is the developer cartridge empty?)
$\mathrm{NO} \longrightarrow(1)$ Check if the shutter seal is removed from the developer cartridge.
(2) Check the toner motor performance, using the following test modes.

Y: 03-110 ON, 03-160 OFF
M: 03-111 ON, 03-161 OFF
C: 03-112 ON, 03-162 OFF
YES
K: 03-113 ON, 03-163 OFF
(3) Check if the developer cartridge gears rotate properly.

As for the colors completely adjusted, press the [INTERRUPT] key to store their adjustment results in the memory. Perform again the adjustment procedure to the color in adjustment error.


### 2.3 Adjustment of Image Quality Control

(1) At the time of unpacking

Prior to image dimensional adjustment, perform the "Automatic initialization of image quality control (05-879)" procedure.
(2) When any of the following parts is replaced, be sure to perform the "Automatic initialization of image quality control (05-879)" procedure.
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { - Processing unit (EPU) } & \text { •Transfer belt unit (TBU) } & \text { • Photoconductive drum } \\ \text { - Developer material } & \text { • Laser optical unit } & \text { •Image quality sensor }\end{array}$
Note: When performing "Automatic gamma adjustment" in addition, "Automatic initialization of image quality control" should be done first.
(3) When performing "Automatic gamma adjustment" in cases other than the above ones, do the "Forced performing of image quality control ( $05-878$ )" procedure before "Automatic gamma adjustment".

| Code | Adjustment item | Contents |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 878 | Forced performing of <br> image quality control | <Procedure> <br> (1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ <br> Adjustment mode |
| 879 | Automatic initialization of <br> image quality control [878] with digital keys and press the [START] key. <br> (3) When the adjustment finishes normally, the copier will return to <br> the adjustment mode's initial state. <br> If an error has occurred, take appropriate action by referring to <br> "4.TROUBLESHOOTING". |  |

### 2.4 Adjustment of Color Registration Control

After having finished the "Automatic initialization of image quality control (05-879)" procedure, perform the "Forced performing of color registration control adjustment (05-407)" procedure.

| Code | Adjustment item | Contents |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 407 | Forced performing of <br> color registration control | <Procedure> <br>  |
|  |  | (1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ <br> Adjustment mode <br> (2) Enter [407] with digital keys and press the [START] key. <br> (3) When the adjustment finishes normally, the copier will return to <br> the adjustment mode's initial state. <br> If an error has occurred, take appropriate action by referring to |
|  |  | "4.TROUBLESHOOTING". |

### 2.5 Image Dimensional Adjustment

There are several adjustment items in the image dimensional adjustment, as listed below. Prior to this image dimensional adjustment, perform the "Automatic initialization of image quality control (05-879)". When adjusting these items, the following adjustment order should strictly be observed.

| Adjustment item |  | Code in mode 05 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (1) Paper alignment (paper buckle) at the registration roller |  | 439-452, 492 |
| (2) Registration motor speed adjustment |  | 406 |
|  | (a) Reproduction ratio adjustment of primary-scanning direction (Fine adjustment of polygonal motor rotation speed) | 400 |
|  | (b) Adjustment of primary-scanning laser writing start position | 470 |
|  | (c) Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary-scanning direction (Fine adjustment of drum motor/transfer belt motor rotation speed) | 401 |
|  | (d) Adjustment of secondary-scanning laser writing start position | 474 |
| (4) | (a) Fine adjustment of fuser motor rotation speed* | 402 |
|  | (b) Fine adjustment of registration motorrotation speed* | 410 |
|  <br> (a) | (a) Image distortion adjustment | - |
|  | (b) Image skewing adjustment | - |
|  | (c) Reproduction ratio adjustment of primary-scanning direction | 482 |
|  | (d) Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary-scanning direction | 104 |
|  | (e) Image location adjustment of primary-scanning direction | 106, 108 |
|  | (f) Image location adjustment of secondary-scanning direction | 105 |
|  | (g) Adjustment of image trailing edge margin | 428 |

[^0][Procedure for entering adjustment values]

In accordance with the procedure described below, make adjustment of each adjustment item so that the measured values obtained from test copies satisfy the specification. By pressing the [ENERGY SAVER] key, immediately after starting the adjustment mode (05), single-sided test copying can be performed (normal copy mode).
<Operation keys>
(1)

(CLEAR Use to make corrections

| $100 \%$ | A | A3 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TEST MODE |  |  |
|  |  |  |



Power OFF/ON : Exit the adjustment mode.

### 2.5.1 Paper alignment (paper buckle) at the registration roller

<Operation procedure> (Use codes 439 to 452 and 492 in adjustment mode (05).)

|  | Copier cassettes |  |  |  | ADU | LCF |  | Bypassfeeding | Thick paper2 | Thick paper3 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { OHP bypass } \\ & \text { feeding } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\begin{gathered} \text { 1st } \\ \text { cassette } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 2nd } \\ \text { cassette } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3rd } \\ \text { cassette } \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 4th } \\ & \text { cassette } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Long size | 439 | 441 | 443 | 445 | 447 | 44 |  | 450 | 451 | 452 | 492 |
| Short size | 440 | 442 | 444 | 446 | 448 |  |  | 450 | 451 |  | 492 |

(1)


(2) Check for any transfer void or " $Z$ " fold. If a transfer problem is present, try the values in descending order as " 31 " $\rightarrow$ " 30 " $\rightarrow$ " 29 "... until the transfer void disappears. At the same time, confirm that any paper jam has not occurred. Also, when the aligning amount has been increased, this may increase the scraping sound which occurs when the paper scrapes on the mylar sheet as it is transferred by the registration roller. If this scraping sound is irritating, try reducing the aligning amount.
(3) Do the same for ADU, LCF, bypass feeding, thick paper 2, thick paper 3 and OHP bypass feeding.


## Note:

When paper thinner than specified is used, paper jams may occur frequently at the registration section. In this case, it is advisable to change (or reduce) the aligning amount.
However, if the aligning amount is reduced too much, this could cause the leading edge margin to vary adversely. So, when adjusting the aligning amount, try to choose the appropriate amount while checking the leading edge margin at the same time.

If the paper feed roller has prematurely become defective, it is possible to extend its service life, if necessary, by increasing the aligning amount, as a temporary measure until a replacement becomes available.

### 2.5.2 Registration motor speed adjustment

The paper transport speed of the registration roller vis-a-vis the image pirnt speed can be set to the optimum value.
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing the digital keys [ 0 ] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
(2) Set five sheets of A4-R /LT-R paper into the bypass tray.
(3) Enter [10] and press the [PRINTER/NETWORK] key to perform the continuous printing of five "adjustment charts" from the bypass tray.
(4) Since the printed sheets of "adjustment charts" are slightly shrunk after being fused, it it required to wait one to two minutes to cool them for precise adjustment. Then, set those five sheets again into the bypass tray in the same print direction, with the chart face upward.
(5) Without changing the adjustment mode, enter [406] and press the [START] key. While the "adjustment chart" sheets are fed and transported, the pitches in the black belt zone are read.
(6) Step (5) is to be repeated five times automatically.

The displayed set value does not change until the fourth round and at the fifth round, a newly set value is displayed.
(7) When a newly set value for aligning is displayed at the fifth round, press the [INTERRUPT] key to update the set value.
If error or jam occurs when feeding the adjustment charts, press the [CLEAR] key and perform step (2) to step (7) again.

### 2.5.3 Printer section related adjustment

(a) Reproduction ratio adjustment of primary-scanning direction (Fine adjustment of polygonal motor rotation speed)

1. While pressing the digital keys [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
2. Press [1] $\rightarrow$ PRRINTER/NETWORK]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use $A 3 / L D$ from the 2nd cassette.)
3. Measure the distance A from the first grid line at the rear to the 21st of the grid pattern.
4. Check if the distance $A$ is within $200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
5. If it is not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat step 2. to 4. above.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { <Procedure> } & (\text { Adjustment mode }) \rightarrow(\text { Enter code [400] with digital keys } \rightarrow \text { [START] } \\
& \rightarrow \text { (Enter a value (acceptable values: } 1209 \text { to } 1235) \text { with digital keys) } \\
& \rightarrow[\text { SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory }) \\
& \rightarrow \text { (Enter code [407] with digital keys) } \rightarrow[\text { START] } \\
& \rightarrow \text { Forced performing of color registration control }
\end{array}
$$

*The larger the adjustment value, the shorter the distance A becomes ( $0.082 \% /$ step $=0.164 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $)$.
(b) Adjustment of primary-scanning laser writing start position

1. While pressing the digital keys [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
2. Press [1] $\rightarrow$ PRRINTER/NETWORK]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use A3/LD from the 2nd cassette.)
3. Measure the distance $B$ from the front edge of the paper to the 1st grid line from the front of the grid pattern.
4. Check if the distance $B$ is within $5 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
5. If it is not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat step 2. to 4. above.
<Procedure> (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [470] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values: 0 to 255) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory).
$\rightarrow$ (Enter code [407] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ Forced performing of color registration control
*The larger the adjustment value, the longer the distance B becomes ( $0.0423 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step ).
(c) Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary-scanning direction (Fine adjustment of drum motor/transfer belt motor rotation speed)
6. While pressing the digital keys [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
7. Press [1] $\rightarrow$ [PRINTER/NETWORK]. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use A3/LD from the 2nd cassette.)
8. Measure the distance $C$ between the 6th (down from the leading edge of the paper) and the 26th grid lines of the grid pattern.
9. Check if the distance $C$ is within $200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
10. If it is not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat step 2. to 4. above.
<Procedure> $\quad$ (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [401] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values: 1608 to 1965) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
$\rightarrow$ (Enter code [407] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ Forced performing of color registration control
*The larger the adjustment value, the shorter the distance C becomes ( $0.074 \% /$ step $=0.15 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $)$.
(d) Secondary-scanning laser writing start position adjustment
11. While pressing the digital keys [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
12. Press $[1] \rightarrow[P R I N T E R / N E T W O R K]$. (A grid pattern with 10 mm squares is printed out. Use $A 3 / L D$ from the 2nd cassette.)
13. Measure the distance $D$ from the leading edge of the paper to the 6 th grid line of the grid pattern.
14. Check if the distance $D$ is within $55 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
15. If it is not, use the following procedure to change values and repeat step 2. to 4. above.
<Procedure> $\quad$ (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [474] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values: 1 to 15) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
$\rightarrow$ (Enter code [407] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ Forced performing of color registration control
*The larger the adjustment value, the shorter the distance $D$ becomes ( $0.6 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).

Note: The reproduction ratio adjustment and the laser writing start position adjustment in the primary- and secondary-scanning directions have a connection as shown below.

1. When $05-400$ is adjusted, $05-401,402,403,404,410$ and 474 are automatically adjusted.
2. When $05-401$ is adjusted, $05-402,403,404,410$ and 474 are automatically adjusted.
3. When 05-406 is adjusted, 05-404 and 410 are automatically adjusted.
4. When $05-410$ is adjusted, $05-404$ is automatically adjusted.

[Grid pattern]
<Adjustment order>
[0] [5] [power ON] $\rightarrow$ [1] $\rightarrow$ [PRINTER/NETWORK] (2nd cassette, A3/LD)
A: 05-400 $\rightarrow 200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.164 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}) \rightarrow 05-407$
B: 05-470 $\rightarrow \quad 5 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.042 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $) \rightarrow 05-407$
C: $05-401 \rightarrow 200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.15 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $) \rightarrow 05-407$
D: 05-474 $\rightarrow 55 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.6 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}) \quad \rightarrow 05-407$

### 2.5.4 Scanner related adjustment

(a) Image distortion adjustment

Note: The screws on the rear side of mirror- 1 and -3 must not be adjusted.

<Procedure>
Remove the original glass and the left top cover, and then move carriage- 1 toward the paper exit side until it stops. Insert a plus type screwdriver through the hole of the indicator unit to adjust the screws as per step 1 to step 2 below.

## Step 1

In case of (A):
Tighten the mirror-2 adjustment screw (CW).
$\rightarrow$ Go to ©

In case of (B):


Loosen the mirror-2 adjustment screw (CCW).
$\rightarrow$ Go to (D)

## Step 2

In case of ©
Tighten the mirror-1 adjustment screw (CW).
$\rightarrow$ Normal image

In case of (D):
Loosen the mirror-1 adjustment screw (CCW).
$\rightarrow$ Normal image

Note: After the image distortion adjustment, when the adjustment screws of mirror-1 and -2 are turned, lock the adjustment screws using the adhesive "BOND-1324" for screw locking .
[Application Method of the Adhesive for the Screw Locking]
(1) Adjust the image distortion.
(2) Remove the original glass and the indicator unit.
(3) Move carriage-1 toward the paper exit side.
(4) Apply the adhesive (BOND-1324) to the adjustment screws of carriage-1 and -2 .


Note: Application Method
*Apply good quantity of the adhesive to the "Application area".
*The adhesive needs 12 hours to harden completely.
(5) Confirm that there is no dust or stain on mirror-$1,-2$ or -3 or the shading correction plate.
(6) Install the indicator unit and the original glass.

(b) Image skewing adjustment


If the copy image is tilted even when the original is placed precisely against the original scale, adjust the original scale to correct this problem.

When the image is tilted as in (A):

- Move the original scale in the direction of the arrow $A \rightarrow$.

When the image is tilted as in (B):

- Move the original scale in the direction of the arrow $B<=$.


The following adjustments (c) to (g) should be conducted using Test Chart No.TCC-1. (Refer to page 222.)
(c) Reproduction ratio adjustment of primary-scanning (Scanner section)

1. While pressing the digital keys [ 0 ] and [ 5 ] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
2. Place Test Chart No. TCC-1 on the original glass (with the arrow positioned at the left rear side).
3. Press [ENERGY SAVER] $\rightarrow$ [START] to make a copy in the mode of A4/LT, $100 \%$, full color and text/ photo.
4. Measure the distance A between M 1 and M 2 on the copy with a ruler.
5. Check if the distance $A$ is within a range of $200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
6. If it is not, change values using the following procedure, and repeat step 3. to 5. above.
<Procedure> (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [482] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values : 112 to 142) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
$\rightarrow$ (Enter code [407] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ Forced performing of color registration control

* The larger the adjustment value, the shorter the distance A becomes ( $0.2 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).
(d) Reproduction ratio adjustment of secondary-scanning (Scanner section)

1. While pressing the digital keys [ 0 ] and [ 5$]$ simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
2. Place Test Chart No. TCC-1 on the original glass (with the arrow positioned at the left rear side).
3. Press [ENERGY SAVER] $\rightarrow$ [START] to make a copy in the mode of A4/LT, $100 \%$, full color and text/ photo.
4. Measure the distance B between M 3 and M 4 on the copy with a ruler.
5. Check if the distance $B$ is within a range of $150 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
6. If it is not, change values using the following procedure, and repeat step 3. to 5 . above.
<Procedure> (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [104] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values : 1 to 255) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
$\rightarrow$ (Enter code [407] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ Forced performing of color registration control
*The larger the adjustment value, the longer the distance $B$ becomes( $0.23 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step})$.
(e) Image location adjustment of primary-scanning direction (Scanner section)
7. While pressing the digital keys [ 0 ] and [ 5$]$ simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
8. Place Test Chart No. TCC-1 on the original glass (with the arrow positioned at the left rear side).
9. Press [ENERGY SAVER] $\rightarrow$ [START] to make a copy in the mode of A4/LT, $100 \%$, full color and text/ photo.
10. Measure the distance $C$ from the left paper edge to the 5 mm line of left grid pattern on the copy with a ruler.
11. Check if the distance $C$ is within a range of $5 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
12. If it is not, change values using the following procedure, and repeat step 3. to 5. above.
<Procedure> (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [106] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values : 5 to 251) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
*The larger the adjustment value, the shorter the distance $C$ becomes ( $0.042 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).
13. When the distance C is within the acceptable range, perform the following procedure.
<Procedure> (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [108] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value with digital keys, deducting 47 from the value set in the 05-106 )
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
(f) Image location adjustment of secondary-scanning direction (Scanner section)
14. While pressing the digital keys [ 0 ] and [ 5 ] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
15. Place Test Chart No. TCC-1 on the original glass (with the arrow positioned at the left rear side).
16. Press [ENERGY SAVER] $\rightarrow$ [START] to make a copy in the mode of A4/LT, $100 \%$, full color and text/ photo.
17. Measure the distance $D$ from the top paper edge to the 10 mm line of top grid pattern on the copy with a ruler.
18. Check if the distance $D$ is within a range of $10 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
19. If it is not, change values using the following procedure, and repeat step 3. to 5. above.

| <Procedure> | (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [105] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START] |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | $\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values : 85 to 171) with digital keys) |
|  | $\rightarrow[$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory) |

*The larger the adjustment value, the longer the distance $D$ becomes ( $0.12 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).
(g) Adjustment of image trailing edge margin

1. While pressing the digital keys [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ (Adjustment mode)
2. Place Test Chart No. TCC-1 on the original glass (with the arrow positioned at the left rear side).
3. Press [ENERGY SAVER] $\rightarrow$ [START] to make a copy in the mode of A4/LT, 100\%, full color and text/ photo.
4. Measure the margin width $E$ on the bottom edge of the copy image with a ruler.
5. Check if the margin width $E$ is within a range of $2.5 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ or not.
6. If it is not, change values using the following procedure, and repeat step 3. to 5. above.
<Procedure> (Adjustment mode) $\rightarrow$ (Enter code [428] with digital keys) $\rightarrow$ [START]
$\rightarrow$ (Enter a value (acceptable values : 0 to 255) with digital keys)
$\rightarrow$ [SET] or [INTERRUPT] (Stored in memory)
*The larger the adjustment value, the smaller the margin width on the bottom edge becomes ( $0.042 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{step}$ ).

<Adjustment order>
[0][5][Power ON] $\rightarrow$ (Chart TCC-1) $\rightarrow$ [ENERGY SAVER] $\rightarrow$ [START] (A4/LT, 100\%, full color and text/photo)
A: 05-482 $\rightarrow 200 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.2 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $) \rightarrow 05-407$
B: 05-104 $\rightarrow 150 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.23 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $) \rightarrow 05-407$
C: $05-106 \rightarrow 5 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.042 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $)$
D: 05-105 $\rightarrow 10 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ ( $0.12 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step)
E: 05-428 $\rightarrow 2.5 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.042 \mathrm{~mm} /$ step $)$


### 2.6 Image Quality Adjustment

### 2.6.1 Automatic gamma adjustment

(1) At the time of unpacking:

When the reproduction of gradation is not appropriate, the gradation reproducibility of all colors $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}$, C and K can be corrected by performing this automatic gamma adjustment. Check the image, and if the gradation reproduction is not satisfactory, make this adjustment as described below.
(2) When any of the following parts has been replaced, be sure to make this adjustment:

- Laser optical unit - Photoconductive Drum • Developer material
(3) When any of the following parts are replaced or adjusted, make a copy and check the image to determine if adjustment is necessary:
- Main charger
- Transfer belt

Note: Be sure that this adjustment be made after performing the image adjustment in "2.3 Adjustment of Image Quality Control", "2.4 Adjustment of Color Registration Control" and "2.5 Image Dimensional Adjustment".

| Code | Adjustment item | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 643 | Automatic gamma adjustment | <Procedure> <br> (1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON. $\rightarrow$ Adjustment mode <br> (2) Select the A3 cassette. Press [4] $\rightarrow$ [PRINTER/NETWORK] key and output a "Patch chart for gamma adjustment". <br> (3) Place the patch chart for adjustment produced in step (2) face down on the original glass, with its side, on which a black band is present, aligned against the original scale. <br> (4) Enter code [643] with digital keys and press the [START] key. <br> $\rightarrow$ The scanner reads the chart automatically and performs automatic gamma adjustment calculation (approx. 30 sec .). <br> (5) When the adjustment has finished normally, "SCAN COMPLETE" is shown. Press the [START] key to have the adjustment results reflected. (To cancel the reflection of adjustment results, press the [STOP] key.) <br> Note: After the [START] key is pressed, the printer section will operate for about 15 seconds and the density of the standard pattern for image quality control will be measured. <br> In the case of an abnormal ending, "ADJUSTMENT ERROR" is shown. Press the [STOP] key to clear the error display. When it is cleared, the control panel display will return to the standby state. Then, check if the patch chart on the original glass is placed in the wrong direction or if it is placed inclined on the original glass, and then repeat step (3) and afterward. |

### 2.6.2 Density adjustment

The center density and the density variation controlled by density adjustment keys can be adjusted as follows.

| Color <br> mode | Original mode |  |  |  |  | Items to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Text/photo | Text | Printed image | Photo | Map |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 흥 } \\ & \overline{\overline{3}} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | 550 | 551 | 552 | 553 | 554 | Manual density center value | The larger the value, the darker the image becomes. |
|  | 560 | 561 | 562 | 563 | 564 | Manual density "dark" step value | The larger the value, the darker the "dark" side becomes. |
|  | 570 | 571 | 572 | 573 | 574 | Manual density "light" step value | The larger the value, the lighter the "light" side becomes. |
|  | 580 | 581 | 582 | 583 | 584 | Automatic density | The larger the value, the darker the image becomes. |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 들 } \\ & \frac{\pi}{0} \end{aligned}$ | 555 | 556 | 557 | 558 | 559 | Manual density center value | The larger the value, the darker the image becomes. |
|  | 565 | 566 | 567 | 568 | 569 | Manual density "dark" step value | The larger the value, the darker the "dark" side becomes. |
|  | 575 | 576 | 577 | 578 | 579 | Manual density "light" step value | The larger the value, the lighter the "light" side becomes. |
|  | 585 | 586 | 587 | 588 | 589 | Automatic density | The larger the value, the darker the image becomes. |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Enter the code of required mode (color mode, original mode, item to be adjusted) with digital keys and press the [START] key.
(3) Enter an adjustment value with digital keys (acceptable values: 0 to 255 ).
(To correct an entered value, press the [CLEAR] key.)
(4) Press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to store the value. $\rightarrow$ The copier goes back to the standby state.
(5) Press the [ENERGY SAVER] key and then press the [START] key to make a test copy.
(6) If the desired image density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (5).

### 2.6.3 Color balance adjustment

|  | Original mode |  |  |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Text/ <br> photo | Text | Printed image | Photo | Map |  |  |
| Adjustment code | 779 | 780 | 781 | 782 | 783 | Yellow | The larger the value, the darker the color to be adjusted becomes. Acceptable values: 0 to 255. |
| Sub-code | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Low density |  |
|  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Medium density |  |
|  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | High density |  |
| Adjustment code | 784 | 785 | 786 | 787 | 788 | Magenta |  |
| Sub-code | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Low density |  |
|  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Medium density |  |
|  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | High density |  |
| Adjustment code | 789 | 790 | 791 | 792 | 793 | Cyan |  |
| Sub-code | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Low density |  |
|  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Medium density |  |
|  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | High density |  |
| Adjustment code | 794 | 795 | 796 | 797 | 798 | Black |  |
| Sub-code | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Low density |  |
|  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Medium density |  |
|  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | High density |  |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
Note: Be sure that this adjustment be made after performing "2.6.1 Automatic gamma adjustment".
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Enter the code of required mode (color mode, original mode, item to be adjusted) with digital keys and press the [START] key.
(3) Select the density area to be adjusted with digital keys ( 0,1 or 2 ), and press the [START] key.

$$
0 \text { : Low density (L) } 1 \text { : Medium density (M) } 2 \text { : High density (H) }
$$

(4) Enter an adjustment value with digital keys.
(To correct an entered value, press the [CLEAR] key.)
(5) Press the [SET] key to have the value memorized. $\rightarrow$ Returns to the display in step (3).
(6) For resetting the value, repeat step (3) to (5).
(7) Press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to store the value in memory. $\rightarrow$ The copier goes back to the standby state.
(8) Press the [ENERGY SAVER] key and then press the [START] key to make a test copy.
(9) If the desired image density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (8).

### 2.6.4 Offset adjustment for background processing

The density of background and text can be adjusted as follows.

| Color <br> mode | Original mode |  |  |  |  | Item to be adjusted | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Text/photo | Text | Printed image | Photo | Map |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 흥 } \\ & \overline{\bar{O}} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | 698 | 699 | 700 | 701 | 702 | Density adjustment for background | The larger the value, the darker the background becomes. |
|  | 708 | 709 | 710 | 711 | 712 | Density adjustment for text | The larger the value, the darker the text becomes. |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 들 } \\ & \frac{\pi}{0} \end{aligned}$ | 703 | 704 | 705 | 706 | 707 | Density adjustment for background | The larger the value, the darker the background becomes. |
|  | 713 | 714 | 715 | 716 | 717 | Density adjustment for text | The larger the value, the darker the text becomes. |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Enter the code of required mode (color mode, original mode, item to be adjusted) with digital keys and press the [START] key.
(3) Enter an adjustment value with digital keys. (To correct an entered value, press the [CLEAR] key.)
(4) Press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to store the value in memory. $\rightarrow$ The copier goes back to the standby screen.
(5) Press the [ENERGY SAVER] key and then press the [START] key to make a test copy.
(6) If the desired image density has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (5).

### 2.6.5 Judgment threshold for ACS

The judgment level is adjusted for the automatic identification of whether the original set on the glass is black-and-white or color. Namely, this is to adjust the judgment level used when "Auto color" is selected in the color mode.

| Code | Adjustment item | Contents |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 675 | Judgment threshold <br> for ACS | The larger the value, the more an original tends to be judged to be <br> black-and-white, and the smaller the value, the more it tends to be <br> judged to be color. |

### 2.6.6 Al mode setting

(a) Al mode discrimination setting

Select the discrimination level in the AI mode as follows:

| Code | Adjustment item | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 678 | Al mode discrimination setting | <Procedure> <br> (1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power. <br> (2) Enter code [678] with digital keys. <br> (3) Enter a setting value: <br> 0 : Standard (for regular) <br> 1: Photograph priority <br> 2: Only judgment of original type <br> 3: Only judgment of original type with photograph priority <br> 4: No AI discrimination <br> (4) Press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to store the setting value. |

(b) Al mode time-out setting

Set the maximum processing time allowable in the AI mode.
Note: In case discrimination does not finish within specified time, Al mode discrimination stops and copy operation is performed in the selected copy mode.

Two kinds of setting are made; one for originals of A4/LT or smaller sizes, and the other for originals larger than A4/LT.

| Code | Adjustment item | Contents |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 682 | Al mode <br> time-out setting | <Procedure> <br>  |
|  |  | (1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power. <br> (2) Enter code [682] with digital keys. <br> (3) Enter a setting value: <br> The setting value should be in two digits; the first digit is the |
|  |  | time-out period for A3/LD original size while the second digit is <br> the time-out period (seconds) for A4/LT original size. Both digits <br> should be in the range of 1 to 9. However, time is set in proportion <br> to original sizes for originals larger than A4/LT, based on A4/LT <br> and A3/LD setting value. |
|  |  | (4) Press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to store the setting value. |

### 2.6.7 Sharpness adjustment

If you want to make copy images look softer or sharper, perform the following adjustment. The adjustment can be made for each of the color modes and original modes independently.

| Code | Color mode | Original mode | Contents |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 737 | Full color | Text/photo | - The larger the value, the sharper the image becomes; while the smaller the value, the softer the image becomes. <br> - The smaller the value, the less moire tends to appear. <br> - The acceptable values are 0 to 31 . <br> The center value is 16 . <br> However, 0 is equivalent to the center value. <br> Note: You have to make adjustment by compromising between moire and sharpness. |
| 738 |  | Text |  |
| 739 |  | Printed image |  |
| 740 |  | Photo |  |
| 741 |  | Map |  |
| 742 | Black | Text/photo |  |
| 743 |  | Text |  |
| 744 |  | Printed image |  |
| 745 |  | Photo |  |
| 746 |  | Map |  |

Make a test copy and compare the image obtained with the current settings; if necessary, make adjustment using the following procedure.
<Procedure>
(1) While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
(2) Enter the code of required mode (color mode or original mode) with digital keys and press the [START] key.
(3) Enter an adjustment value with digital keys.
(To correct an entered value, press the [CLEAR] key.)
(4) Press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key to store the value in memory. $\rightarrow$ The copier goes back to the standby state.
(5) Press the [ENERGY SAVER] key and then press the [START] key to make a test copy.
(6) If the desired image sharpness has not been attained, repeat step (2) to (5).

### 2.7 High-Voltage Transformer Settings

### 2.7.1 Overview

This machine uses four main high-voltage transformers for charging/development/discharging and one transfer transformer for transfer/suction.

The main high-voltage transformers (PS-HVT-M-314) are used each for one of the colors $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K , giving a total of four units.
The transfer transformer (PS-HVT-TB-310) supplies high-voltage for the transfer rollers $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K and the suction charger to be used in black mode.

The main high-voltage transformers have the following high-voltage outputs.
CH 1 : main charger wire
CH 2 : main charger grid bias
CH3: developer bias
CH 4 : cleaning blade bias

The transfer transformer has the following high-voltage outputs.
CH1: transfer roller bias (Y)
CH2: transfer roller bias (M)
CH3: transfer roller bias (C)
CH4: transfer roller bias (K)
CH5: suction charger

* CH5 is used in black mode only.

Note: The main high-voltage transformer and transfer transformer for service parts are supplied with the data sheets to be used for the following setup. Be careful not to lose them.

Output adjustment is performed when the devices are shipped, so under any circumstances, do not move the fixed volumes of resistors.

### 2.7.2 Settings after replacing main high-voltage transformers

After replacing a main high-voltage transformer, be sure to enter the data shown on the supplementary data sheet (main charger grid bias and developer bias) according to the procedure below.
<Settings for main charger grid bias>
(1) Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously.
(2) Enter code 252 and press the [START] key.
$\rightarrow$ The lower limit value for main charger grid bias is displayed for each $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(3) Enter the sub-code ( $0: \mathrm{Y}, 1: \mathrm{M}, 2: \mathrm{C}, 3: \mathrm{K}$ ) and press the [START] key.
(4) Enter a value according to the supplementary data sheet and press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
(5) Enter code [253] and press the [START] key.
$\rightarrow$ The upper limit value for main charger grid bias is displayed for each $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(6) Enter the sub-code ( $0: \mathrm{Y}, 1: \mathrm{M}, 2: \mathrm{C}, 3: \mathrm{K}$ ) and press the [START] key.
(7) Enter a value according to the supplementary data sheet and press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
(8) Turn the power OFF.
< Settings for developer bias >
(1) Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously.
(2) Enter code [257] and press the [START] key.
$\rightarrow$ The lower limit value for developer bias is displayed for each $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(3) Enter sub-code (0: Y, 1: M, 2: C, 3: K) and press the [START] key.
(4) Enter a value according to the supplementary data sheet and press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
(5) Enter code [258] and press the [START] key.
$\rightarrow$ The upper limit value for developer bias is displayed for each $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(6) Enter the sub-code ( $0: \mathrm{Y}, 1: \mathrm{M}, 2: \mathrm{C}, 3: \mathrm{K}$ ) and press the [START] key.
(7) Enter a value according to the supplementary data sheet and press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
(8) Turn the power OFF.

### 2.7.3 Settings after replacing transfer transformer

After replacing a transfer transformer, be sure to enter the data shown on the supplementary data sheet (transfer bias) according to the procedure below.
<Settings for transfer bias>
(1) Turn the power ON while pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously.
(2) Enter code [367] and press the [START] key.
$\rightarrow$ The lower limit value for transfer bias is displayed for each $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(3) Enter the sub-code ( $0: \mathrm{Y}, 1: \mathrm{M}, 2: \mathrm{C}, 3: \mathrm{K}$ ) and press the [START] key.
(4) Enter a value according to the supplementary data sheet, and press [SET] or [INTERRUPT].

* Perform the operation in steps (3) and (4) for each of Y, M, C and K.
(5) Enter code [368] and press the [START] key.
$\rightarrow$ The upper limit value for transfer bias is displayed for each $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(6) Enter the sub-code ( $0: \mathrm{Y}, 1: \mathrm{M}, 2: \mathrm{C}, 3: \mathrm{K}$ ) and press the [START] key.
(7) Enter a value according to the supplementary data sheet, and press [SET] or [INTERRUPT].
* Perform the operation in steps (6) and (7) for each of $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K .
(8) Turn the power OFF.


### 2.8 Adjustment of the Developer Unit

### 2.8.1 Doctor-to-Sleeve Gap

Adjustment tool to use : Doctor-sleeve jig

## Adjusting procedure:

(1) Remove the developer unit from the processing unit (EPU), and then remove the developer unit cover and toner-scattering prevention seal holder from the developer unit.

(2) Loosen the 2 screws for fixing the doctor blade (M3), and insert the gauge " 0.65 " of the jig into the gap between the developer sleeve and the doctor blade to adjust the gap.
Fasten the screws for fixing the doctor blade after adjusting.

(3) Insert the gauge " 0.60 " of the jig into the gap between the sleeve and the doctor, and make sure that the gauge can move smoothly in the front $\leftrightarrow$ rear direction. In addition, confirm that the gauge " 0.70 " cannot be inserted into the gap.


## Notes:

1. When confirming and adjusting the gap between the developer sleeve and the doctor blade, insert the gauges into the gap after rotating the developer sleeve so that its marking faces the doctor blade.
2. While reinstalling the toner-scattering prevention seal holder, insert the slide hooks securely.
3. After reinstalling the toner-scattering prevention seal holder, make sure that each of the side mylar sheets (on the front and rear) is between the 2 urethane rubber sheets.
4. While reinstalling the developer unit cover, fit the latches securely.

### 2.9 Adjustment of the Scanner Section

### 2.9.1 Carriages

(a) Installing carriage drive wires

When replacing the carriage drive wires with new wires, proceed as illustrated below:


Notes:1. Since the carriage drive wires are applied with proper tension by tension springs, there is no need for tension adjustment.
2. Check that the wire tension is identical for both front and rear wires and is properly applied.
(b) Adjusting the positions of carriage-1 and -2

1. Loosen 2 screws (on the front and rear) which are fixing carriage- 1 to the wires, and another 1 screw (on the front) which is fixing carriage-2 to the wires.
2. Move carriage-2 to the exit side. Insert the carriage jigs into the jig-insertion holes, one on each side (front and rear) of carriage-2, and fasten the screw on the front side of carriage-2.
3. While placing the protruding parts of carriage-1 against the carriage jigs, fasten 2 screws on front
 and rear sides to fix the carriage- 1 to the wire on both front and rear sides.
4. Pull out the carriage jigs.

(c) Installing the carriage drive wires to the wire pulleys

## Winding the wire to the wire pulleys:

1. Fit the $3-\mathrm{mm}$ ball terminal in the center of the wire into the hole of the wire pulley. The wire should be positioned so that the hook at its end faces upward with its crimped side.
2. Wind the wires onto the wire pulleys on the front and rear. The number of turns to be wound are as follows (see the illustrations below):

- One turn on the inside of the boss.
- Six turns on the outside of the boss.

After winding the wires on the pulleys, fix the wires with wire holder jigs to prevent them from unwinding.
[Rear side]


[Front side]



## Notes :

1. When winding the wires on the pulleys, take the following precautions:

- Do not wind the wire on the pulley with the wire twisted.
- Wind the wire strongly so that all the turns of the wire are in firm contact with the surface of the pulley.
- Each time you wind a turn on the pulley, push it to the preceding turn so that all

No gap should exist.

2. When fitting wire holder jigs, take care so that the turns wound on the pulleys do not move or unwind.
<Relationship between wound turns and wire holder jigs>


### 2.9.2 Lens unit

(a) Replacing the lens unit

- Since the lens unit was precisely adjusted at the factory, it must not be readjusted in the field or some of its components must not be replaced. If necessary, the lens unit should be replaced as a unit.
- While replacing with a new lens unit, never loosen or remove the six screws indicated with arrows below. They are locked with adhesive.

- Use sufficient care when handling the lens unit. Never hold the precision-adjusted area of the lens unit.

(b) Installing the lens unit

Use the positioning pins to install the lens unit. By that the installing position of the lens unit is fixed, and therefore there is no need to adjust the magnification ratio of the lens.
<Procedure>

1. Insert the positioning pins (front and rear)into the holes of the lens unit (as $A$ in the illustration below), and install the unit to the base of the scanner unit (note that the shapes of the front positioning pins are different from that of the rear ones).
2. Fix the 2 long holes (as $B$ in the illustration below) with the screws.


### 2.10 Adjustment of the Paper Feeding System

### 2.10.1 Cassette sidewise deviation

(1) Loosen 5 screws for fixing the cassette front cover, and the sidewise deviation can be adjusted toward the front or the rear by a maximum of 3 mm .
(2) If the image is shifted toward the rear of paper, adjust the cassette front cover toward the front by the amount of the shift, and fasten the screws.
(3) If the image is shifted toward the front of paper, adjust the cassette front cover toward the rear by the amount of the shift, and fasten the screws.


### 2.11 Key Copy Counter (MU-8, MU-10)

To make a key copy counter available, the following 2 components must be installed to the copier.

<Installation procedure>
(1) Remove the rear cover.
(2) Remove the feed side upper cover, and cut open the window for the key copy counter.
(3) Pull out the harness connector from the hole of the machine frame, and cut the short harness of the connector. (Treat the cut harness properly to avoid it causing a short-circuit with the machine frame.) Then, disconnect the dummy connector.

(4) Connect the connector of the counter socket to the harness connector of the copier side.
(5) Install the counter socket to the machine frame with two M3 screws.
(6) Reinstall the feed side upper cover and the rear cover.

(7) Insert the key copy counter with its arrow mark facing up and pointing toward the copier.

(8) Enter the value " 3 " in the setting mode ( 08 202).

## 3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

### 3.1 Types of Preventive Maintenance

The following two types of preventive maintenance should be performed:
Note: Values of the sheets correspond to the FC-210/FC-310.
(1) General maintenance (General PM)

General maintenance should be performed based on the value of the general PM counter (08-857).
This maintenance, which covers the black developer unit as well as the entire machine, should be conducted in conjunction with the replacement cycle (every $40 / 60 \mathrm{~K}$ sheets) of the black developer material.
(2) Color maintenance (Color PM)

Color maintenance should be performed based on the value of the color PM counter (08-897).
This maintenance, which is performed with a focus on the color developer units, should be conducted in conjunction with the replacement cycle (every 40/60K sheets) of the color developer materials. The cycle (counter value) of color maintenance is determined by the ratio of color printouts to black printouts, as shown by the following table, "Variation in PM cycles due to color/black printout ratios".

Variation in PM cycles due to color/black printout ratios

| Color | Black | General PM (sheets) | Color PM (sheets) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $100 \%$ | $0 \%$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| $90 \%$ | $10 \%$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ | $44.4 / 66.7 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| $80 \%$ | $20 \%$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ | $50.0 / 75.0 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| $70 \%$ | $30 \%$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ | $57.1 / 85.7 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| $60 \%$ | $40 \%$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ | $66.7 / 100.0 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| $50 \%$ | $50 \%$ | $40.0 / 60.0 \mathrm{~K}$ | $80.0 / 120.0 \mathrm{~K}$ |

*Therefore, parts replacing, cleaning and lubrication for the paper feeding system, scanner section,
transfer/transport unit, fuser unit,etc. should all be performed in conjunction with the replacement
cycle of the black developer material.
e.g.) Replacing the lowerheatroller : At the 1st cycle of replacing black developer material

$$
\begin{array}{r}\text { (40/60K copies) }\end{array}
$$

Replacing the transfer belt : At the 3rd cycle (FC-210) /2nd cycle (FC-310) of replacing black
developer material
(120/120K copies)

* For the details of maintenance items, refer to the checklist described later.
* Yields are based on factory defaults.


### 3.2 Outline of the Maintenance Order

(1) Preparation
a. Discuss current machine conditions with the key operator and note them down.
b. Before starting maintenance, make a few sample copies by TCC-1 chart and keep them for later reference purposes.
c. Turn OFF the power switch, and be sure to unplug the copier.
(2) Perform preventive maintenance following the checklist shown below. During maintenance, refer to the illustrations attached and the Service Manual as required.
(3) After having finished the maintenance, plug in the copier, turn ON the power switch, and make a few copies to confirm that the copier is working normally.

### 3.3 Preventive Maintenance Checklist

Symbols used in the checklist


Notes: 1. Values under "Cleaning" and "Replacement" indicate the cleaning and replacement cycles for the FC210/310.
2. Lubricate every 40,000 sheets for FC-210 and 60,000 sheets for FC-310. Lubricate to the replacement parts according to the replacement cycle.
3. Do not stain any oil on the rollers, belts and belt pulleys.
4. The replacement cycle of the parts in the feeding section depends on the number of sheets fed from each paper source.
5. <P-I> under "Remarks" indicates page and item number in the Parts List.

## General Maintenance Checklist

| Section | Item to inspect | Cleaning (X 1000) | Lubri- <br> cation | $\left\|\begin{array}{c} \text { Replace- } \\ \text { ment } \\ (X 1000) \end{array}\right\|$ | Operation check | Remarks <P-I> | Reference counter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Processing unit (EPU) <br> (Only Black related parts) | 1. Developer material |  |  | 40/60 |  | *8 | Developer K counter(08-847) |
|  | 2. Doctor blade | O (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  | *1 |  |
|  | 3. Developer unit drum seal | O (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  | *9 |  |
|  | 4. Front/rear sides of developer unit | O (40/60) |  |  |  | *2 |  |
|  | 5. Oil seal portion |  | AV |  |  |  |  |
|  | 6. Drum cleaning blade |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} * 3 \\ <\text { P23-113> } \end{gathered}$ | Drum K life counter (08-843) |
|  | 7. Recovery blade | O (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  | * 4 |  |
|  | 8. Felt seals on both ends of the cleaning blade | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 9. Entire developer/cleaner unit | O (40/60) |  |  |  | *7 |  |
|  | 10. Main charger case | O (40/60) |  |  |  | * 6 |  |
|  | 11. Discharge LED | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 12. Wire cleaning pad |  |  | 40/60 | $\bigcirc$ | <P22-I16> |  |
|  | 13. Main charger wire |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} * 6 \\ <\text { P22-115> } \end{gathered}$ |  |
|  | 14. Main charger grid |  |  | 40/60 |  | <P22-I24> | Note: <br> Clear "Drum <br> K drive cou- <br> nter(08-870)' <br> when drum has been replaced. |
|  | 15. Main charger contact | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 16. Drum |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.2 } \\ & <\text { P22-I38> } \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | 17. Drum shaft | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 18. Drum thermistor | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 19. Toner recovery auger drive | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ | W |  |  |  |  |
| Around EPU area | 20. Toner cartridge drive gear |  | W |  |  |  |  |
|  | 21. Ozone filter |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} * 5 \\ <P 6-137> \end{gathered}$ |  |
|  | 22. Toner bag |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { Key-operator's } \\ \text { item } \\ <\text { P33-133> } \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Fuser unit | 23. Fuser belt |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.6 } \\ & <\text { P28-I24> } \end{aligned}$ | Fuser unit counter (08-854) |
|  | 24. Upper heat roller | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 25. Fuser roller |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.5 } \\ & <\text { P28-I17> } \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | 26. Lower heat roller |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.6 } \\ & <\text { P27-I14> } \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | 27. Belt guide |  |  | 40/60 |  | <P28-I16> |  |
|  | 28. Separation guide | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 29. Separation fingers |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} * 10 \\ <\text { P28-128> } \end{gathered}$ |  |
|  | 30. Oil roller |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.7 } \\ & <\text { P28-144> } \end{aligned}$ |  |


| Section | Item to inspect | Cleaning (X 1000) | Lubrication | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { Replace- } \\ \text { ment } \\ (X 1000) \end{array}$ | Operation check | Remarks <P-l> | Reference counter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Fuser unit | 31. Cleaning roller |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.7 } \\ & <\text { P28-I45> } \end{aligned}$ | Fuser unit counter(08-854) |
|  | 32. Upper thermistors | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 33. Lower thermistors | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 34. Fuser inlet guide | A (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 35. Fuser exit guide | A (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 36. Paper exit roller | A |  |  |  |  |  |
| Image quality control | 37. Image quality sensor's area | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  | *11 | Drum K life counter (08-843) |
| Color registration | 38. Color registration sensor | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
| Laser unit | 39. Slit glass | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
| Paper feeding system | 40. Pick-up roller | A (40/60) |  | 90 |  | <P14-I13> | - |
|  | 41. Feed roller | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 42. Separation roller | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 43. Bypass pick-up roller | A (40/60) |  | 90 |  | <P17-I52> |  |
|  | 44. Bypass feed roller | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 45. Bypass separation roller | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 46. Registration roller | A (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 47. Paper guide | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 48. Paper dust removal brush | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 49. Drive gears (tooth face) |  | W |  |  |  |  |
|  | 50. Registration unit support bushings |  | W |  |  |  |  |
| Scanner | 51. Original glass | Oor A (40/60) |  |  |  |  | - |
|  | 52. Platen cover | Oor A (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 53. Mirror-1 | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 54. Mirror-2 | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 55. Mirror-3 | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 56. Reflector | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 57.Lens | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 58. Exposure lamp |  |  | $\triangle$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
|  | 59. Original-width indicator |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
|  | 60. Automatic original detection unit |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
|  | 61. Slide sheet |  |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 62. Air filter | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
| Transfer/ transport unit (TBU) | 63. Transfer belt |  |  | 120/120 |  | <P30-12> | Transfer belt unit counter (08-853) |
|  | 64. Transfer roller (Y, M, C, K) |  |  | 120/120 |  | <P30-122> |  |
|  | 65. Drive roller cleaning felt |  |  | 120/120 |  | <P30-127> |  |
|  | 66. Transfer belt cleaning blade |  |  | 120/120 |  | <P30-146> |  |
|  | 67. Transfer belt recovery blade | O(120/120) |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 68. Transfer belt drive roller | $\bigcirc(120 / 120)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 69. Transfer belt driven roller | $\bigcirc(120 / 120)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |

Color Maintenance Checklist

| Section | Item to inspect | Cleaning (X 1000) | Lubri- <br> cation | $\begin{gathered} \text { Replace- } \\ \text { ment } \\ (X 1000) \end{gathered}$ | Opera- <br> tion check | Remarks <P-I> | Reference counter |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Processing unit (EPU) | 1. Developer material (Y,M,C) |  |  | 40/60 |  | *8 | Developer Y, M,C counter (08-844,845, 846) |
|  | 2. Doctor blade | O (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  | *1 |  |
|  | 3. Developer unit drum seal | O (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  | *9 |  |
|  | 4. Front/rear sides of developer unit | O (40/60) |  |  |  | *2 |  |
|  | 5. Oil seal portion |  | AV |  |  |  |  |
|  | 6. Drum cleaning blade |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} * 3 \\ <\mathrm{P} 23-113> \end{gathered}$ | Drum Y,M,C life counter (08-840,841 842) |
|  | 7. Recovery blade | O (40/60) |  | $\triangle$ |  | *4 |  |
|  | 8. Felt seals on both ends of the cleaning blade | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  | $\triangle$ |  |  |  |
|  | 9. Entire developer/cleaner unit | O (40/60) |  |  |  | *7 |  |
| (Color(Y,M,C) | 10. Main charger case | O (40/60) |  |  |  | *6 |  |
| related parts) | 11. Discharge lamp | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  | Note: <br> Clear "Drum Y,M,C drive counter (08867,868, 869)" when drums have been replaced. |
|  | 12. Wire cleaning pad |  |  | 40/60 | $\bigcirc$ | <P22-I16> |  |
|  | 13. Main charger wire |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{gathered} * 6 \\ <\text { P22-115> } \end{gathered}$ |  |
|  | 14. Main charger grid |  |  | 40/60 |  | <P22-I24> |  |
|  | 15. Main charger contact | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 16. Drum |  |  | 40/60 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ch.3.6.2 } \\ & <\text { P22-I38> } \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | 17. Drum shaft | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 18. Drum thermistor (Y) | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 19. Toner recovery auger drive | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ | W |  |  |  |  |
| Image quality control | 37. Image quality sensor's area | O (40/60) |  |  |  | *11 |  |
| Color registration | 38. Color registration sensor | $\bigcirc(40 / 60)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Laser unit | 39. Slit glass | O (40/60) |  |  |  |  |  |



[Processing unit (EPU)]

[Front side drive system]

## * Notes on the Preventive Maintenance Checklist

* 1. Doctor blade cleaning

Note: This cleaning should be done subsequent to "Automatic removing of developer material".
(1) Move the developer removal shutter lever in the direction of the arrow shown to close the developer removal opening.
(2) Remove the developer unit from the EPU.

(3) Remove the developer unit cover. Insert the doctor blade cleaning jig between the doctor blade and the sleeve and move the jig back and forth along the edge 3 times to clean the doctor blade.
(4) After the cleaning, return the developer removal shutter lever to open the developer removal opening (move the lever in a direction reverse to (1)).
(5) Making the developer removal opening point downward, remove the developer material remaining in the developer unit. (Shake the developer unit to the right and left, and rotate the mixer and the sleeve alternately.)

*2 Front/rear sides of developer unit
Clean off any toner accumulating on the developer sleeve ends indicated with arrows and in the area beneath the scattered toner recovery roller.

*3 Cleaning blade
If poor cleaning has occurred due to such causes as adhesion of paper dust, etc. prior to the specified number of printouts for replacement, replace the cleaning blade as required because the blade edge may have been damaged.
*4 Recovery blade
If the blade edge has been marred, replace the blade regardless of the number of printouts that have been made so far.
*5 Ozone filter
If the ozone filter is heavily dirty, replace it.
*6 Main charger case and charger wire
To clean the inside of the main charger case and the charger wire, use a cloth which should be soaked in water and then wrung lightly.
*7 Developer unit and cleaner unit
Check if the outside surfaces including the bottom surfaces are dirty, and clean if necessary.
*8 Developer material
When the developer material is replaced, be sure to perform "automatic adjustment of the autotoner sensor" (adjustment mode 05-200, 204, 221).
*9 Drum seal
Use a cloth which should be soaked in water and then wrung strongly to clean the front seal.
*10 Separation fingers
Replace the finger if its tip is damaged, regardless of the specified number of printouts for replacement. If toner is fused tightly on the tip, the tip may be damaged if you try to scrape the toner off forcefully. So, replace it that is heavily dirty with toner.
*11 Image quality sensor's area
Clean the shutter of the image quality sensor and around it. Don't touch the sensor head inside the shutter.

### 3.4 PM Kit

| Kit name | Breakdown of kits | Part name | Q'ty | No. of printouts for replacement cycle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { DEV-KIT-FC31 } \\ & (40 / 60 \mathrm{~K} \mathrm{kit}) \end{aligned}$ | 1. Developer material $Y$ | PS-ZDFC31Y | 1 | 40/60K |
|  | 1. Developer material M | PS-ZDFC31M | 1 |  |
|  | 1. Developer material C | PS-ZDFC31C | 1 |  |
|  | 1. Developer material K | PS-ZDFC31K | 1 |  |
|  | - Doctor blade cleaning jig | JIG-CLEAN-DOC | 1 |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { EPU-KIT-FC31 } \\ & \text { (40/60K kit) } \end{aligned}$ | 6. Drum cleaning blade | BL-FC22D | 4 | 40/60K |
|  | 12. Charger wire cleaning pad | K-WIRE-CLN-ARM | 4 |  |
|  | 13. Main charger wire | WIRE-CH-310 | 4 |  |
|  | 14. Main charger grid | GRID-CH-314 | 4 |  |
|  | 21. Ozone filter | K-FILTER-OZN | 1 |  |
| FU-KIT-FC31 <br> (40/60K kit) | 23. Fuser belt | BT-FC31FU | 1 | 40/60K |
|  | 25. Fuser roller | FR-FC31FU | 1 |  |
|  | 26. Lower heat roller | HR-FC31-L | 1 |  |
|  | 27. Belt guide | STOP-FU-BELT-HR | 2 |  |
|  | 28. Separation finger | SCRAPER-PRS-213 | 6 |  |
|  | 29. Oil roller | SR-FC31U | 1 |  |
|  | 30. Cleaning roller | B-FC31U | 1 |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { TBU-KIT-FC31 } \\ & (120 / 120 \mathrm{~K} \text { kit }) \end{aligned}$ | 62. Transfer belt | BT-FC22TR | 1 | 120/120K |
|  | 63. Transfer roller | CR-FC31TR | 4 |  |
|  | 64. Drive roller cleaning felt | FP-FC22TR | 1 |  |
|  | 65. Transfer belt cleaning blade | BL-FC22TR | 1 |  |

*The numbers in the "Breakdown of kits" column above correspond with the numbers in the Preventive Maintenance Checklist.

### 3.5 List of Adjustment Tools

| Name | Parts List |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | Page | Item |
| Door switch keep-ON jig | 100 | 1 |
| Wire holder jig | 100 | 2 |
| Doctor - sleeve gap adjustment jig | 100 | 3 |
| Cleaning brush | 100 | 6 |
| Doctor blade cleaning jig | 100 | 7 |
| Test chart (No. TCC-1) | 100 | 9 |
| Scanner carriage jig (front) | 100 | 10 A |
| Scanner carriage jig (rear) | 100 | 10 B |
| Lens unit positioning pin (front) | 100 | 15 |
| Lens unit positioning pin (rear) | 100 | 16 |
| Fuser belt replacing jig | 100 | 17 |
| Downloading jig (DLM board) | 100 | 18 |
| Downloading jig (DLS board) | 100 | 19 |

### 3.6 Precautions for Storing/Handling Supplies and Parts

### 3.6.1 Precautions for storing TOSHIBA supplies

A. Toner and developer

Toner and developer should be stored in a shaded place where the ambient temperature is between 10 to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (no condensation), and should also be protected against direct sunlight during transportation.

## B. Photoconductive drum

Like toner and developer, Photoconductive drums should be stored in a dark place where the ambient temperature is between 10 to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (no condensation). Be sure to avoid places where drums may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or chemical gas.
C. Drum cleaning blade, transfer belt cleaning blade

Blades should be stored "horizontally" on a flat surface where the ambient temperature is between 10 to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, and should also be protected against high humidity, chemicals and/or chemical gas.
D. Transfer belt, transfer roller, fuser belt, fuser roller, lower heat roller

Avoid places where the belts and rollers may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or chemical gas.
E. Oil roller, cleaning roller

Avoid places where the rollers may be subjected to high humidity, chemicals and/or chemical gas. They should also be stored "horizontally" on a flat surface.

## F. Copy paper

Avoid storing copy paper in places where it may be subjected to high humidity.
After a package is opened, be sure to place and store it in a storage bag.

### 3.6.2 Checking and cleaning of the photoconductive drum

(1) Use of gloves

If fingerprints or oil stain the OPC drum surface, the characteristics of the photoconductor may degrade, affecting the quality of the image. So, do not touch the drum surface with your bare hands.
(2) Handling precautions

As the OPC drum surface is very delicate, be sure to handle the drum carefully when installing and removing it so as not to damage its surface.
When the drum is replaced with a new one, be sure to apply "patting powder" (lubricant) to the entire surface of the new drum before installing. After installing, the drum counter corresponding to the replaced durm must be cleared to 0 (zero) by operating the setting mode (08-867~870).

## Notes:

1. Application of the patting powder is for reducing the friction between the drum and the cleaning blade. If the application of patting powder is neglected, the drum and the cleaning blade may be damaged.
2. When some fibers adhere to the cleaning blade edge, they may reduce the cleaning efficiency and, in addition, may damage the blade and the drum. Be sure to remove any fibers found adhering to the blade.
(3) Handling at installing of the copier and replacing of the drum

At installing the copier and replacing the drum, do not leave the drum in a brightly lit place for a long time.
Otherwise, the drum will be fatigued, producing some background fogging on the image after being installed in the copier. However, this effect will decrease as time elapses.
(4) Cleaning of the drum

At preventive maintenance, wipe softly the entire surface of the drum using the designated cleaning cotton (dry soft pad). Use sufficiently thick cleaning cotton so as not to touch the drum surface inadvertently with your fingertips or nails. Also, remove your rings and wristwatch before starting cleaning work to prevent accidental damage to the drum.
Do not use organic solvents such as alcohol or silicone oil as they will have an adverse effect on the drum. Never use selenium refresher, either.
(5) Scratches on photoconductive drum surface

If the surface is scratched to such a degree that the aluminum base is exposed, black spots or streaks will be produced on images and can also damage the cleaning blade. So, replace the drum with a new one.
(6) Recovery of used photoconductive drums

Regarding the recovery and disposal of used drums, you should follow your relevant local regulations and rules.

### 3.6.3 Checking and cleaning of the drum cleaning blade and transfer belt cleaning blade

(1) Handling precautions

Since the edge of the cleaning blade performs the cleaning operation, pay special attention when handling it:

- Do not allow any hard object to hit or rub against the blade edge. Do not rub the edge with a cloth or soft pad.
- Do not stain the edge with any oil or fingerprints, etc.
- Do not allow solvents such as paint thinner to touch the blade.
- Do not leave any lint or dirt on the blade edge.
- Do not place the blade near a heat source.
(2) Cleaning procedure

Clean the blade edge lightly with a cloth moistened with water.

### 3.6.4 Checking and replacing the transfer belt

(1) Handling precautions

- Do not touch the belt surface with your bare hands.
- Prevent oil or other foreign matter from staining the belt surface.
- Do not allow alcohol or any other organic solvent to come into contact with the transfer belt.
- Do not apply external pressure that might scratch the transfer belt.


### 3.6.5 Checking and replacing the transfer roller and fuser roller

(1) Handling precautions

- Do not touch the roller surface with your bare hands.
- Be carefull not to leave any scratch or dent on the roller surface.


### 3.6.6 Checking and cleaning of the fuser belt and lower heat roller

(1) Handling precautions

Fuser belt

- Take great care not to let the belt surface be folded.
- Do not touch the belt surface with your bare hands.
- Prevent oil or other foreign matter from staining the belt surface.
- Do not allow alcohol or any other organic solvent to come into contact with the fuser belt.
- Do not apply external pressure that might scratch the fuser belt.

Lower heat roller

- Do not leave any oil (fingerprints, etc.) on the lower heat roller.
- Be careful not to allow any hard object to hit or rub against the lower heat roller, or it may be damaged, possibly resulting in poor cleaning.
(2) Checking
- Check for stain and damage on the fuser belt and lower heat roller and clean if necessary.
- Clean the separation guide and fingers and check for chipped tips.
- Check the cleaning effect of the cleaning roller.
- Check the thermistors for proper contact with the upper and lower heat rollers.
- Check the fused and fixed condition of the toner.
- Check the gap between the inlet guide and lower heat roller.
- Check the fuser belt for proper transportation.
- Check the lower heat roller for proper rotation.
(3) Cleaning procedure for fuser belt and lower heat roller

When fuser belt and lower heat roller become dirty, they will cause jamming. If this happens, wipe the surface clean with a suitable cloth. For easier cleaning, clean the belt and roller while they are still warm.

## Note:

Be careful not to rub the fuser belt and lower heat roller surface with your nails or hard objects because it can be easily damaged. Do not use silicone oil on the fuser belt and lower heat roller.
(4) Checking after the assembly of the fuser belt unit

After the assembly, rotate the fuser belt for a round to confirm that the belt is neither folded nor damaged.
A folded or damaged belt may be broken when it is in use.

### 3.6.7 Checking and replacing the oil roller and cleaning roller

(1) Handling precautions

Never allow solvents such as paint thinner to touch to the oil/cleaning rollers.
(2) Poor cleaning and corrective treatment

Judgment should be made depending on how much toner has been deposited on the fuser belt surface. When its surface is stained with toner, examine the oil roller and cleaning roller. If toner is heavily adhered on the oil/cleaning rollers, it means the cleaning performance is declined and the oil/cleaning rollers should be replaced with new ones.
The oil/cleaning rollers are gradually degraded due to subjection to the heat from the fuser belt over a long period of time. Replace them after the specified number of printouts have been made.

## 4. TROUBLESHOOTING

## <CAUTION IN REPLACING PC BOARDS>

The ID for each machine is registered on the LGC board, the IMC board, the IMG board and the SYS board. So, if their replacement is required, be sure to replace only one board at a time.

If more than one of the LGC board, the IMC board, the IMG board and the SYS board require replacement, replace them in the following procedure.

1. First, replace one of the boards to be replaced.
2. Turn the power ON and confirm that "READY" is displayed.
3. Turn the power OFF.
4. Replace another board that requires replacement.
5. Repeat step 2. to 4.

### 4.1 Diagnosis and Prescription for Each Error Code

### 4.1.1 Paper transport jam inside the copier

[E01] Paper leading edge not reaching the exit sensor
[E02] Paper trailing edge not passing the exit sensor


Where was the paper stopped?

[E03] Paper remaining inside the copier at power ON
Is any paper remaining inside the copier?
$\mathrm{NO} \xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Remove the paper.
Refer to [E01], [E02] and [E11] to [E26].

## [EB7] Restart time-out error

Turn the power OFF and back ON
In case that this error occurs frequently, confirm the contents of the following items in the setting mode and report them.

08-900 Firmware version (Basic section ROM)
08-902 Engine ROM version (LGC)
08-903 Printer ROM version (IMC)
Condition at error occured (original size, paper size, copy mode, etc.)

### 4.1.2 Paper feeding jam

## [E11] Paper misfeed from the ADU

Is any paper remaining in the paper feed area inside the ADU?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{YES}}$ Remove the paper.

Is the connector J104 on the LGC board disconnected?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the ADU drawer connector open-circuited?
NO $\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the LGC board.
2. Replace the ADU.

## [E12] Paper misfeed from the bypass



Repair the actuator if it has come off.
[E13] Paper misfeed from the 1st cassette
[E14] Paper misfeed from the 2nd cassette
[E15] Paper misfeed from the 3rd cassette
[E16] Paper misfeed from the 4th cassette
Open the side door; does any paper remain in the paper path from the cassette?


Is the width of the side guide set too narrow for the paper width?
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Set the side guide wider.
(When the tray is being lifted, make sure that a gap is left between the paper and the side guide.)

Is the harness between the LGC board and the cassette feed-jam sensor open-circuited? Is the cassette feed-jam sensor connector or the connector J106 or J107 on the LGC board disconnected?


1. Replace the cassette feed-jam sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.

## [E19] Paper misfeed from the LCF

Open the side door; does any paper remain in the paper path from the LCF?


Is the harness between the LGC board and the cassette feed-jam sensor open-circuited?
Is the cassette feed-jam sensor connector or the connector J105 or J107 on the LGC board $\xrightarrow[\text { NO }]{\substack{\text { disconnected? } \\ \text { YES }}}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the cassette feed-jam sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.

### 4.1.3 Paper transport jam (Paper not reaching the registration sensor after feeding)

[E21] Paper transport jam from the LCF
[E22] Paper transport jam from the 1st cassette
[E23] Paper transport jam from the 2nd cassette
[E24] Paper transport jam from the 3rd cassette
[E25] Paper transport jam from the 4th cassette
[E26] Paper transport jam from the bypass feed unit
Open the side door; does any paper remain in the paper path up to the registration roller?


Is the harness between the LGC board and the cassette feed-jam sensor open-circuited?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the registration sensor open-circuited?
Is the cassette feed-jam sensor connector, registration sensor connector, or the connector J107
or J108 on the LGC board disconnected?
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the cassette feed-jam sensor or the registration sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.

### 4.1.4 Cover open jam

[E41] Front cover opened during printing
*To avoid electrical hazards, the following checks must be made after unplugging the power cord.

Is the front cover or the paper-exit unit open?

No
YES

Is the $A C$ harness between the main switch, front cover switch, paper-exit unit switch and switching power supply open-circuited?
Is any of the faston terminals (front cover switch, paper-exit unit switch, main switch) and the connector J701 of the switching power supply disconnected?


YES
Reconnect the disconnected faston terminal or connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the front cover switch or the paper-exit unit switch.
2. Replace the main switch.
3. Replace the switching power supply.

## [E42] Side door opened during printing



Is the harness between the LGC board and the side door open/close switch open-circuited? Is the side door open/close switch connector or the connector J107 on the LGC board disconnected?

No
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the side door open/close switch.
2. Replace the LGC board.

## [E43] ADU pulled out during printing

$\xrightarrow{\text { Is the ADU pushed in securely to the copier? }}$
Is connector J104 on the LGC board disconnected?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the ADU drawer connector open-circuited?


1. Replace the LGC board.
2. Replace the ADU.
[E45] LCF jam access cover opened during printing


Is the harness between the LGC board and the LCF unit open-circuited?
Is the relay connector of the harness between the LGC board and the LCF unit or the connector J105 on the LGC board disconnected?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{YES}}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the LGC board.
2. Replace the LCF unit.

## [E46] Bypass unit opened during printing



Is the harness between the LGC board and the bypass unit open/close switch open-circuited? Is the bypass unit open/close switch connector or the connector J108 on the LGC board disconnected?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the bypass unit open/close switch.
2. Replace the LGC board.

### 4.1.5 Paper jam in ADU and reversing area

[E50] Paper not reaching the ADU
[E51] Paper not restarting from the ADU stack
[E54] ADU paper transport jam
Is the ADU pushed in securely to the copier?

YES
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Push in the ADU securely to the copier.
Is the connector J104 on the LGC board disconnected?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the ADU drawer connector open-circuited?
NO $\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the LGC board.
2. Replace the ADU.

## [E52] Paper not reaching the ADU path sensor

Is the harness between the LGC board and the ADU path sensor open-circuited?
Is the ADU path sensor connector or the connector J123 on the LGC board disconnected?

NO
YES
Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the ADU path sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.

### 4.1.6 Original jam in the RADF

[E71] Original not reaching the aligning sensor
[E72] Original not reaching the exit sensor
[E73] Original not passing the exit sensor
[Two or more originals are fed simultaneously.]


## [The original does not reach the aligning roller.]



Is the transporting force of the pick-up roller or the feed roller insufficient? YES

Replace the roller.
[The original stops, skewed on the original glass.]


Is the RADF correctly installed?


Properly install the RADF in parallel to the copier.
Make sure that the skew and height are properly adjusted.
[The side edges of the original are out of alignment with the side edges of the copy.]


Shift the original feeding tray back or forth to adjust.

### 4.1.7 Paper jam in the finisher

## [E9F] Punching jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or copier?

NO
YES
Remove the paper.

Is either of the connectors J 1 or J 3 on the punch driver PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting the punch driver PC board and punch home position sensor


Is the punch home position sensor working properly?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ 1. Connect the connector of the punch home position sensor securely.
YES
2. Replace the punch home position sensor.

Replace the punch driver PC board.

## [EA1] Finisher paper transport delay jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or copier?


Is the connector J 17 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting the finisher controller PC board and inlet sensor (PI1) open-circuited?


Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [EA2] Finisher paper transport stop jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or copier?
YES
NO
Is any of the connectors $\mathrm{J} 17, \mathrm{~J} 24, \mathrm{~J} 9$ and J 11 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected? Is any of the harnesses connecting between the finisher controller PC board and sensors (inlet sensor (PI1), buffer path inlet paper sensor (PI17), buffer path paper sensor (PI14), stapling tray sensor (PI4) and delivery sensor (PI3)) open-circuited?

YES
Connect the connector securely. Replace the harness.
NO
Are the inlet sensor, buffer path inlet paper sensor, buffer path paper sensor, stapling tray sensor and delivery sensor functioning properly? (Do the actuators return normally?)
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ 1. Connect the connectors of the sensors securely.
2. Attach the actuators if they have come off.
3. Replace the sensors.

Replace the finisher controller PC board.
[EA3] Paper remaining inside the finisher at power ON
Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher?

NO
YES
Remove the paper.

Is any of the connectors $\mathrm{J} 17, \mathrm{~J} 24$ and J 11 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected?
Is any of the harnesses connecting between the finisher controller PC board and sensors (inlet sensor (PI1), buffer path inlet paper sensor (Pl17), buffer path paper sensor (PI14) and delivery sensor ( PI 3 )) open-circuited?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Connect the connector securely. Replace the harness.
Are the inlet sensor, buffer path inlet paper sensor, buffer path paper sensor and delivery sensor functioning properly? (Do the actuators return normally?)
$\xrightarrow{\text { NO }} 1$. Connect the connectors of the sensors securely.
2. Attach the actuators if they have come off.

YES
3. Replace the sensors.

Replace the finisher controller PC board.
[EA4] Finisher front door opened during printing
Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or copier?


Is the connector J 12 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected? Is the harness connecting the finisher controller PC board and joint sensor (PI15) open-circuited?


Is the door of the finisher closed?

Is the connector J12 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected? Is the harness connecting the finisher controller PC board and door opening sensor (PI16) open-circuited? $\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Connect the connector securely. Replace the harness. NO
Is the door opening sensor working properly?
$\xrightarrow{\text { NO }}$ 1. Connect the connector of the door opening sensor securely.
2. Replace the door opening sensor.

Is the connector J 5 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting the finisher controller PC board and door switch (MS1) open-circuited?


Is the door switch working properly?


Is the connector J5 on the punch driver PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting between the punch driver PC board and front door switch (MS2P) opencircuited?

NO
Is the front door switch working properly?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ 1. Connect the connector of the front door switch securely.
2. Replace the front door switch.

YES
Is the problem solved by replacing the punch driver PC board?


NO
Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [EA5] Finisher stapling jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or copier, or on the stapling tray?

NO
Is the jam cleared by taking off the staple cartridge from the finisher and removing the staple sheet slided from the staple case?


Is the connector J8 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting the finisher controller PC board and staple home position sensor (PI22) open-circuited?
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Connect the connector securely. Replace the harness.
Is the staple home position sensor working properly?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Replace the stapler unit.
YES
Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [EA6] Finisher early arrival jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or copier?


Is the connector J17 on the finisher controller PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting the finisher controller PC board and inlet sensor (PI1) open-circuited?


YES

Is the inlet sensor functioning properly? (Does the actuator return normally?)


Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [EA8] Saddle stitcher stapling jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher, saddle stitcher section or copier, or on the stapling tray?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Remove the paper.
Is the jam cleared by taking off the staple cartridge from the saddle stitcher and removing the staples stuck in the stapling unit?


Is the connector J 8 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board disconnected?
Is the harness connecting the saddle stitcher controller PC board and stitcher home position switch (rear:MS5S, front:MS7S) open-circuited?


Are the stitcher home position switches working properly?


Replace the stapler unit.

Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.
[EA9] Saddle stitcher door opened during printing
Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher, saddle stitcher section or copier?


Is either of the connectors J 10 or J11 on saddle stitcher controller PC board disconnected?
Is any of the harnesses connecting between the saddle stitcher controller PC board and cover opening sensors (PI2S: front door opening/closing sensor, PI3S: delivery cover sensor, PI9S: inlet cover sensor) open-circuited?


Are the cover opening sensors working properly?


1. Connect the connectors of the cover opening sensors securely.
2. Replace the cover opening sensors.

Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.
[EAA] Paper remaining at the saddle stitcher at power ON
Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher or saddle stitcher section?


Is any of the connectors $\mathrm{J} 10, \mathrm{~J} 13$ and J9 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board disconnected? Is any of the harnesses connecting between the saddle stitcher controller PC board and sensors (No. 1 paper sensor (PI18S), No. 2 paper sensor (PI19S), No. 3 paper sensor (PI20S), vertical path paper sensor (PI17S) and delivery sensor (PI11S)) open-circuited?


Are the No. 1 paper sensor, No. 2 paper sensor, No. 3 paper sensor, vertical path paper sensor and delivery sensor functioning properly? (Do the actuators return normally?)

2. Attach the actuators if they have come off.
3. Replace the sensors.

Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.

## [EAB] Saddle stitcher transport stop jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher, saddle stitcher section or copier?
YES Remove the paper. NO

Is either of the connectors J 10 or J9 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board disconnected? Is any of the harnesses connecting between the saddle stitcher controller PC board and sensors (No. 1 paper sensor (PI18S), No. 2 paper sensor (PI19S), No. 3 paper sensor (PI20S) and delivery sensor (PI11S)) open-circuited?
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Connect the connector securely. Replace the harness.
NO
Are the No. 1 paper sensor, No. 2 paper sensor, No. 3 paper sensor and delivery sensor functioning properly? (Do the actuators return normally?)

NO

1. Connect the connectors of the sensors securely.
2. Attach the actuators if they have come off.
3. Replace the sensors.

YES
Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.

## [EAC] Saddle stitcher transport delay jam

Is there any paper remaining on the transport path in the finisher, saddle stitcher section or copier?
$\xrightarrow{ }$ Remove the paper.
Is any of the connectors $\mathrm{J} 6, \mathrm{~J} 9$ and J 10 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board disconnected? Is any of the harnesses connecting between the saddle stitcher controller PC board and the sensors (No. 1 paper sensor (PI18S), No. 2 paper sensor (PI19S), No. 3 paper sensor (PI20S), delivery sensor (PI11S), and paper positioning plate paper sensor (PI8S)) open-circuited?

YES
NO
Connect the connector securely. Replace the harness.
Are the No. 1 paper sensor, No. 2 paper sensor, No. 3 paper sensor, delivery sensor, and paper positioning plate paper sensor functioning properly? (Do the actuators return normally?)

$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$

1. Connect the connector of the sensor securely.
2. Attach the actuator if it has come off.
3. Replace the sensor.

Replace the saddle controller controller PC board.

## [EAE] Finisher receiving time time-out jam

Is the finisher working?

NO
YES $\nabla$

1. Check if the voltage $(24 \mathrm{~V})$ is being supplied to the finisher.
2. Check the connection of the LGC board and IPC board.
3. Check if the harness connecting the IPC board and finisher I/F connector of the copier side is open-circuited.
4. Check if the harness connecting the I/F connector of the finisher side and finisher controller PC board is open-circuited.
5. Replace the finisher controller PC board.

### 4.1.8 Special sheet jam

[EC2] OHP film used except from bypass tray and 2nd cassette
Use the 2nd cassette or the bypass tray as the feeding source of OHP film.
[EC3] OHP film used in non-OHP mode
Set the specified type of paper as selected on the control panel in the paper source.

### 4.1.9 Drive system related service call

## [C05] ADU motor rotation abnormal

Is the ADU motor rotating properly?
$\xrightarrow{\text { NO }}$ 1. Check if the harness between the LGC board and the ADU drawer connector is open-circuited.
2. Check if the harness between the switching power supply and the ADU drawer connector is open-circuited.
3. Check if any of the connectors J101, J102 and J104 on the LGC board is disconnected.
4. Reduce the mechanical load on the motor by adjusting the drive system. Remove foreign matter if any.
5. Replace the LGC board.

Are the pins B2 and B4 of the connector J104 on the LGC board always at the level "L"?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ 1. Check if the connector J104 on the LGC board is disconnected.
2. Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
3. Check if any harness is open-circuited or any connector pin is disconnected.

YES 4. Replace the LGC board.

1. Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
2. Replace the LGC board.

## [C06] Paper feed motor rotation abnormal

Is the paper feed motor rotating properly?


1. Check if the connector J 41 of the paper feed motor is disconnected.
2. Check if the connector J109 on the LGC board is disconnected.
3. Check if the connector J 703 of the switching power supply is disconnected.
4. Check if the harness between the LGC board and the paper feed motor is open-circuited.
5. Check if the harness between the switching power supply and the paper feed motor is open-circuited.
6. Check if any harness is open-circuited or any connector pin is disconnected.
7. Rotate the motor manually, clockwise as seen from its back, and if the motor load is abnormal, remove any foreign matter from the drive unit.
8. Replace the paper feed motor.
9. Replace the LGC board.

Are the pins A 6 and A10 of the connector J109 on the LGC board always at the level "L"?
NO

1. Check if the connector J 41 of the paper feed motor is disconnected.
2. Check if the connector J 109 on the LGC board is disconnected.
3. Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
4. Check if any harness is open-circuited or any connector pin is disconnected.
5. Replace the LGC board.

YES
6. Replace the paper feed motor.

1. Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
2. Replace the LGC board.
3. Replace the paper feed motor.

## [COA] Developer motor rotation abnormal

Is the developer motor rotating properly?
NO

1. Check if the connector J 41 or J 43 of the developer motor is disconnected.
2. Check if the connector J109 on the LGC board is disconnected.
3. Check if the connector J703 of the switching power supply is disconnected.
4. Check if the harness between the LGC board and the developer motor is opencircuited.
5. Check if the harness between the switching power supply and the developer motor is open-circuited.
6. Check if any harness is open-circuited or any connector pin is disconnected.
7. Rotate the motor manually, counterclockwise as seen from its back, and if the motor load is abnormal, remove any foreign matter from the drive unit. (Do not try to rotate the motor clockwise as seen from its back.)
8. Replace the developer motor.
9. Replace the LGC board.

Are the pins B12 and B16 of the connector J109 on the LGC board always at the level "L"?
NO

1. Check if the connector J 41 of the developer motor is disconnected.
2. Check if the connector J109 on the LGC board is disconnected.
3. Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
4. Check if any harness is open-circuited or any connector pin is disconnected.
5. Replace the LGC board.

YES 6. Replace the developer motor.

1. Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
2. Replace the LGC board.
3. Replace the developer motor.

### 4.1.10 Paper feeding system related service call

[C11] ADU paper side guide operation abnormal
Is the ADU pushed in securely to the copier?
YES $\xrightarrow{N O}$ Push in the ADU securely to the copier.
Has the timing belt for driving the paper side guide come off?


Is the connector J104 on the LGC board disconnected?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the ADU drawer connector open-circuited?
NO $\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the LGC board.
2. Replace the ADU.
[C12] ADU paper end guide operation abnormal

3. Replace the LGC board.
4. Replace the ADU.
[C13] 1st cassette tray operation abnormal
[C14] 2nd cassette tray operation abnormal
[C15] 3rd cassette tray operation abnormal
[C16] 4th cassette tray operation abnormal


Is the harness between the LGC board and the cassette tray-up limit sensor open-circuited? Is the harness between the LGC board and the cassette tray-up motor open-circuited?
Is the cassette tray-up limit sensor connector, cassette tray-up motor connector, or connector $\xrightarrow[\text { NO }]{\xrightarrow[\text { YES }]{ } \xrightarrow{\text { 1. Reconnect the connector. }} \begin{array}{l}\text { 2. Replace the harness. }\end{array}}$


1. Replace the cassette tray-up motor.
2. Replace the cassette tray-up limit sensor.
3. Replace the paper feed unit.
4. Replace the LGC board.

## [C18] LCF tray operation abnormal

Is the harness between the LGC board and the LCF unit open-circuited? Is the relay connector of the harness between the LGC board and the LCF unit or the connector


1. Replace the sensors and switches.
2. Replace the LCF drive PC board or the LCF tray-down switch PC board.
3. Replace the LGC board.

### 4.1.11 Scanner related service call

[C27] Carriage home position sensor not turning OFF within a fixed time [C28] Carriage home position sensor not turning ON within a fixed time

Remove the original glass, move the carriages to the paper feed side, turn ON the power switch, and then proceed to check the following items.
[C27] Are the carriages stuck at a point other than the home position?
YES
Check the SCM and SDV boards for any abnormal circuit.

1. Check if any connector pin is disconnected, or any harness is open- or short-circuited.
2. Check the scan motor drive pulley if its screws are loose.
3. Check if any conductor pattern on the SDV board is open- or short-circuited.
4. Check if any conductor pattern on the SCM board is open- or short-circuited.
5. Replace the SDV board.
6. Replace the SCM board.
[C28] Do the carriages, after arriving at its home position, make a big noise?


Since the carriage home position sensor has not been turned ON,

1. Check if the sensor connector is disconnected.

NO 2. Check the SDV and SCM boards for any abnormal circuit.
Since the carriages do not move,

1. Check if any connector pin is disconnected, or any harness is open- or short-circuited.
2. Check if any conductor pattern on the SDV board is open- or short-circuited.
3. Check if any conductor pattern on the SCM board is open- or short-circuited.
4. Replace the SDV board.
5. Replace the SCM board.
[C29] Exposure lamp disconnection detected

Does the exposure lamp light?

2. Check the shading correction plate of the original-width indicator unit if it is dusty.
3. Check the CCD board for any open- or short-circuited conductor pattern.
4. Check the SCM board for any open- or short-circuited conductor pattern.
5. Replace the SCM board.

NO
6. Replace the lens unit.

1. Check if the lamp connector is disconnected.
2. Check the SCM board if any pin of connectors J7-1, -2 and -3 is disconnected or any harness is open- or short-circuited.
3. Check the SCM board for any open- or short-circuited conductor pattern.
4. Replace the SCM board.
5. Replace the inverter.
6. Replace the exposure lamp.

### 4.1.12 Copy process related service call

## [C31] Used toner transport motor rotation abnormal

Is the harness between the LGC board and the used toner transport motor open-circuited? Is the connector J123 or J102 on the LGC board, the relay connector or the used toner transport motor connector disconnected?

NO YES

Replace the harness. Reconnect the connector.

Is used toner jammed? Is any abnormal mechanical load found?
YES

1. Remove the jammed used toner.
2. Check for any foreign matter in the drive system.
3. Check the bearing of the used toner transport auger for any abnormality.

NO
4. Check if the toner bag is covered with used toner.

1. Replace the used toner transport motor.
2. Replace the LGC board.

* Since the used toner jamming can cause a serious damage to EPU, be sure to check that the EPU functions normally.


## [C33] Developer removal shutter function abnormal

Reduce the mechanical load by adjusting the drive system. Remove any foreign matter.
Is the connector J115 on the LGC board disconnected?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$
Reconnect the connector.

Replace the LGC board.

## [C35] Transfer belt unit contact/release function abnormal

Reduce the mechanical load by adjusting the drive system. Remove any foreign matter.
Is the harness between the LGC board and the transfer/transport unit drawer connector, or the harness inside the transfer/transport unit open-circuited?
Is the transfer belt contact/release drive motor connector, LGC board connector J115 or J102, transfer belt home position switch connector, or transfer belt limit switch connector disconnected?
Is the transfer belt home position switch or the transfer belt limit switch defectively installed?
YES

1. Replace the harness. Reconnect the connector.
2. Reinstall the transfer belt home position switch or the transfer belt limit switch

NO securely.

1. Replace the transfer belt home position switch and the transfer belt limit switch.
2. Replace the transfer belt contact/release drive motor.
3. Replace the LGC board.
[C38] Auto-toner error (K)
[C39] Auto-toner error (C)
[C3A] Auto-toner error (M)
[C3B] Auto-toner error (Y)
Is the harness between the LGC board and the EPU drawer connector open-circuited?
Is any harness inside the EPU or the auto-toner sensor harness open-circuited?
Is the auto-toner sensor connector or the connector J120 on the LGC board disconnected?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{YES}}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.
$\nabla$
4. Replace the auto-toner sensor.
5. Replace the LGC board.
[C3C] Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (K)
[C3D] Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (C)
[C3E] Main charger wire cleaning abnormal (M)
[C3F] Main charger wire cleaning abnormal ( Y )
Is the harness between the LGC board and the EPU drawer connector or any harness inside the EPU open-circuited?
Is the wire cleaner drive motor connector, the connector J120 on the LGC board, the connector of the wire cleaner home position switch, or the connector of the wire cleaner limit switch disconnected?
Has the wire cleaner home position switch or the wire cleaner limit switch defectively installed or $\xrightarrow{\text { come off? }}$
6. Reinstall the wire cleaner home position switch or the wire cleaner limit switch NO securely.

Is the main charger securely installed?
NO
Reinstall the main charger.

Is the mechanical load too heavy?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{YES}}$

1. Check if the cleaning pad is in normal contact with the main charger wire.
2. Eliminate any foreign matter present in the drive system.
3. Check if any movable component is abnormally worn.
4. Clean the wire cleaner drive auger and remove stains or foreign matters.
5. Clean the slidable surface of the charger case and remove stains or foreign matters.
6. Replace the wire cleaner home position switch or the wire cleaner limit switch.
7. Replace the wire cleaner drive motor.
8. Replace the LGC board.

### 4.1.13 Fuser unit related service call

[C41] Thermistor or heater abnormal when warming-up is started
[C42] Thermistor abnormal after the copier has become ready
[C43] Thermistor abnormal during warming-up after abnormality judgment
[C44] Heater abnormal during warming-up after abnormality judgment
[C46] Heater abnormal (low temperature) after the copier has become ready
[C47] Rear thermistor abnormal after the copier has become ready
[C48] Heater abnormal (high temperature)
*To avoid any hazards, be sure to unplug the power cable before proceeding to check the items in 1. and 2. below.
*Be sure that the fuser unit is set in place securely.

## 1. Checking the thermistors

(1) Is any thermistor connector disconnected?
(2) Are the thermistors (upper/lower, center/rear) in proper contact with the upper and lower heat rollers?
(3) Are the harnesses for the thermistors (upper/lower, center/rear) open-circuited?

## 2. Checking the heater lamps and SSRs

(1) Check if the upper or lower heater lamp is open-circuited.
(2) Check if the upper or lower heater lamp connector is disconnected.
(3) Check if the thermostat is blown out.
(4) Check if the upper heat roller or lower heat roller SSR connector is disconnected.
(5) Check if the AC harness is open-circuited.
(6) Check if SSR or the switching power supply is broken.

## 3. Checking the LGC board

(1) Check the LGC board if the connector J123 is disconnected.
(2) Check if the conductor pattern on the LGC board is open- or short-circuited.
(3) Replace the LGC board.

## 4. Clearing the status counter

After completing the repair of what caused the error, proceed to do the following:
(1) While pressing [ 0 ] and [8] simultaneously, turn ON the power.
(2) Enter [700] with digital keys, then press the [START] key.
(3) Rewrite the status counter to "0", then press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key. The status counter is dispalyed as follows:
[C41]: "1" or "2"
[C42]: "6"
[C43]: "4"
[C44]: "5"
[C46]: "7"
[C47]: "8"
[C48]: "9"
(4) Turn OFF the power and then back it ON again, and make sure that the copier gets ready normally.

## [C7] Error C7

* To avoid any hazards, be sure to unplug the power cord before proceeding to check the items in 1. and 2. below.
*Be sure that the fuser unit is set in place securely.

1. Check if any thermistor connector is disconnected.
2. Check if any harness of the thermistors (center/rear, upper/lower) is open-circuited.
3. Check the LGC board if the connector J 122 is disconnected.
4. After completing the repair of what caused the [C7] problem, proceed to rewrite the status counter (08-700) to "0", following the same procedure as for [C41] to [C48] .

### 4.1.14 Communications related service call

## [C57] Communication error between LGC-CPU and IPC board

(1) Check if any conductor pattern on the LGC board, mainly around IC23, IC72, IC74 and J125, is short- or open-circuited.
(2) Check if the conductor pattern on the IPC board is short- or open-circuited.
(3) Replace the IPC board.
(4) Replace the LGC board.
[C5A] Communications error between LGC-CPU and printer controller
<<For a built-in type printer controller>>

1. Check if the printer controller unit is securely mounted on the copier.
2. Check if the harness between the LGC and IMC boards is open-circuited, and if the connector J 113 on the LGC board and the connector J182 on the IMC board are disconnected.
3. Check if the harness between the switching power supply and the printer controller is opencircuited.
4. Check if the connector J710 of the switching power supply is disconnected.
5. Check if any conductor pattern on the IMC, IMG, MTH2 and LGC boards is open- or shortcircuited.
6. Replace the LGC board.
7. Replace the IMG board.
8. Replace the IMC board.
9. Replace the MTH2 board.
<<For an external type printer controller>>
10. Check if the printer controller power is turned ON .
11. Check if the harness between the PIF board and the printer controller is open-circuited.
12. Check if the PIF board is firmly connected to the MTH2 board.
13. Check if the harness between the LGC and IMC boards is open-circuited, and if the connector J113 on the LGC board and the connector J182 on the IMC board are disconnected.
14. Check if any conductor pattern on the PIF, IMG, MTH2, IMC and LGC boards is open- or short-circuited.
15. Replace the PIF board.
16. Replace the LGC board.
17. Replace the IMG board.
18. Replace the IMC board.
19. Replace the MTH2 board.
[C5B] LGC-CPU signal transmission error to IMC-CPU
[C5C] LGC-CPU signal reception error from IMC-CPU
20. Check if the harness between the LGC and IMC boards is open-circuited, and if the connector J113 on the LGC board and the connector J182 on the IMC board are disconnected.
21. Replace the LGC board.
22. Replace the IMC board.

### 4.1.15 ADF related service call

## [C72] Aligning sensor automatic adjustment error

1. Check if any foreign matter is present between the aligning sensor and the reflecting mirror, and if the reflecting mirror is stained.
2. Check if the harness between the aligning sensor and the RADF PC board is open-circuited.
3. Check if any conductor pattern on the RADF PC board is open- or short-circuited mainly around IC1, IC14 and CN14.
4. Replace the aligning sensor.
5. Replace the RADF PC board.
6. Initialize the RADF's EEPROM and perform the sensor automatic adjustment.

## [C73] EEPROM initializing error

1. Check if any conductor pattern on the RADF PC board is open- or short-circuited mainly around IC7.
2. Replace the RADF PC board.
3. Initialize the RADF's EEPROM and perform the sensor automatic adjustment.

## [C74] Paper exit sensor automatic adjustment error

1. Check if any foreign matter is present between the exit sensor and the reflecting mirror, and if the reflecting mirror is stained.
2. Check if the harness between the exit sensor and the RADF PC board is open-circuited.
3. Check if any conductor pattern on the RADF PC board is open- or short-circuited mainly around IC1, IC14 and CN8.
4. Replace the exit sensor.
5. Replace the RADF PC board.
6. Initialize the RADF's EEPROM and perform the sensor automatic adjustment.

### 4.1.16 Other service call (1)

[C94] LGC-CPU abnormal
Is "Call for service" displayed again even after the copier is turned OFF and then back ON?
YES $\xrightarrow{\text { NO }}$ Observe the condition for a while.

1. Check if the conductor pattern between LGC-CPU (IC32) and FROM (IC24) is open- or shortcircuited.
2. If this problem recurs frequently, replace the LGC board.

## [C9A] Main memory abnormal



1. Check if the conductor pattern between the LGC-CPU (IC32), FROM (IC24), SRAM (IC35) and BC-RAM (IC36) is open- or short-circuited
2. If this problem recurs frequently, replace the LGC board.

## [C9B] LGC-CPU protocol error

 [C9D] IMC-CPU protocol errorTurn the power OFF, and back ON.
In case that these errors occur frequently, confirm the contents of the following items in the setting mode and report them.

08-267 C9B/C9D error history display
08-900 Firmware version (Basic section ROM)
08-902 Engine ROM version (LGC)
08-903 Printer ROM version (IMC)

## [C9E] IMC board connection abnormal

Is "Call for service" displayed again even after the copier is turned OFF and then back ON?

YES
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Observe the condition for a while.

1. Check if the IMC board, SYS board and the IMG board are firmly connected to the MTH1 board.
2. Check if the connector J181, J182, J185 or J188 on the IMC board is disconnected.
3. Check if the connector J161 on the IMG board is disconnected.
4. Check if the connector J1 on the SCM board is disconnected.
5. Check if the harness connected to the IMC board is open- or short-circuited or if any connector pin is disconnected.
6. Check if the harness between the SCM and IMG boards is open-circuited or if any connector pin is disconnected.
7. If this problem recurs frequently, replace the IMC board.

### 4.1.17 Laser optical unit related service call

## [CA1] Polygonal motor rotation abnormal



1. Check if any conductor pattern on the IMC board is open- or short-circuited .
2. Replace the IMC board.
3. Replace the laser optical unit.

## [CA2] H-SYNC abnormal



Are both 10th and 12th pins of the connector J188 on the IMC board always at the level "L"?


Is the harness between the RLY and IMC boards open-circuited?
Are the connector J185 on the IMC board or the connector J201 on the RLY board disconnected?

NO
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Replace the harness. Reconnect the connectors.

1. Replace the IMC board.
2. Replace the laser optical unit
[CD1] Laser calibration error (K)
[CD2] Laser calibration error (C)
[CD3] Laser calibration error (M)
[CD4] Laser calibration error (Y)
Replace the IMC board.

### 4.1.18 Finisher related service call

## [CB1] Feed motor abnormal

[Procedure 1] Is the second feed motor (M8) rotating in reverse at the specified timing?


Turn the feed roller-2 in reverse by hand. Do the shutter upper/lower bars move up and down?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Correct the mechanism from the shutter upper/lower bars to the gears of the feed YES Is the shutter closed detecting switch (MS4) working normally?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Replace the switch.
YES
Replace the finisher controller PC board.
[Procedure 2]
Is the second feed motor (M8) rotating in reverse at the specified timing?


Turn the feed roller-2 in reverse by hand. Do the shutter upper/lower bars move up and down?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Correct the mechanism from the shutter upper/lower bars to the gears of the feed roller-2.
YES
Is the shutter open sensor (PI5) working normally?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Replace the sensor.
YES
Replace the finisher controller PC board.
[Procedure 3]
Check the safety zone switch (MS3). Is the switch working normally?


Is the shutter closed detecting switch (MS4) working normally?


Is the shutter closed detecting switch (MS4) correctly pressed?


Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [CB2] Delivery motor abnormal



Does the voltage between J11-4 and -5 on the finisher controller PC board become 24 V when the delivery motor starts rotating?


Is the wiring between the delivery motor and finisher controller PC board correct?


Replace the motor.

## [CB3] Tray lift motor abnormal

[Procedure 1]


Is 24V DC supplied to the tray lift motor (M5) from the finisher controller PC board when the tray is being driven?


Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and the tray lift motor (M5) correct?


Replace the tray lift motor (M5).
[Procedure 2]
Does the tray reach the tray upper limit detecting switch (MS5)?


Is the tray upper limit detecting switch (MS5) working normally?


Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and the tray upper limit detecting switch


Replace the finisher controller PC board.
[Procedure 3]
Does the tray move up/down?
$\xrightarrow{\text { NO }} \xrightarrow{\text { Is the power supplied to the motor from the finisher controller PC board when the }}$ tray is moving? YES $\xrightarrow{N O}$ Replace the finisher controller PC board. Is there any problem with the tray elevation mechanism? $\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Replace the tray lift motor (M5). YES

Correct the tray elevation mechanism.
Are the tray lift motor clock sensor-1/-2 (PI9/PI19) working normally?


Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [CB4] Alignment motor abnormal

Is the alignment guide home position sensor (PI6) working normally?


Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and the alignment motor (M3) correct?


Is there any mechanical problem with the alignment guide movement path?


Is the problem solved by replacing the alignment motor?

[CB5] Staple motor abnormal


## [CB6] Stapler shift motor abnormal



## [CB7] Height sensor abnormal

[Procedure 1]


Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and the height sensor (PS1) correct?


Is the voltage between $\mathrm{J} 6-2(+)$ and $\mathrm{J} 6-4(-)$ on the finisher controller PC board 5 V DC?
YES $\xrightarrow{\text { NO }}$ Replace the finisher controller PC board.
Readjust the height sensor. Replace the height sensor if it still causes the problem.
[Procedure 2]
Is the connector J6 on the finisher controller PC board, J114 of the height sensor (PS1) or relay connector J212 disconnected?


Is the voltage between J6-2(+) and J6-4(-) on the finisher controller PC board 5V DC?
$\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NO}}$ Replace the finisher controller PC board.
YES
Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and height sensor correct?


Replace the height sensor.
[Procedure 3]
Is the problem solved by readjusting the DIP switch?


Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and height sensor (PS1) correct?


Is the voltage between $\mathrm{J} 6-2(+)$ and $\mathrm{J} 6-4(-)$ on the finisher controller PC board 5V DC?
$\xrightarrow{\text { NO }}$ Replace the finisher controller PC board.
YES
Replace the height sensor.

## [CB8] Backup RAM data abnormal


[CB9] Saddle stitcher/paper pushing plate motor abnormal
[Procedure 1]
Is the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S) working normally?


Is the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) operating at the specified timing?


Is the paper pushing plate drive mechanism normal?


Is the problem solved by replacing the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)?

[Procedure 2]
Is the paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15S) working normally?


Is the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) operating at the specified timing?


Is there any problem with the paper pushing plate drive mechanism?


Is the problem solved by replacing the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)?

[Procedure 3]
Is the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1S) working normally?


Is the paper pushing plate motor (M8S) operating at the specified timing?


Is there any problem with the pushing plate drive mechanism?


Is the problem solved by replacing the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)?

[CBA] Saddle stitcher/stitcher motor (front) abnormal
[CBB] Saddle stitcher/stitcher motor (rear) abnormal


Is the stitcher home position switch on the front or rear stitcher (MS7S/MS5S) working normally?


Is the front or rear stitcher operating at the specified timing?
YES $\xrightarrow{N O}$ Replace the front or rear stitcher.
Check the wiring between the stitcher and saddle stitcher controller PC board. If there is no problem, replace the controller PC board.
[CBC] Saddle stitcher/alignment motor abnormal


## [CBD] Saddle stitcher/guide motor abnormal



Is the guide plate drive mechanism normal?

[CBE] Saddle stitcher/paper folding motor abnormal
Is the paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S) working normally?


Is the paper folding home position sensor (PI21S) working normally?

$\xrightarrow[\text { NO }]{\text { Is the paper folding motor (M2S) operating at the specified timing? }}$
$\xrightarrow[\text { Is the paper folding roller drive mechanism }]{\xrightarrow{\text { NO }} \text { Correct the mechanism. }}$


## [CBF] Saddle stitcher/paper positioning plate motor abnormal


[CD5] Saddle stitcher/sensor connector connection error
[Procedure 1]
Is the connector of guide home position sensor (PI13S) connected to the connector on the saddle


Is the wiring between the sensor and the saddle stitcher correct?


Is 5V DC being supplied from J9-7 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board?


[Procedure 2]
Is the connector of paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S) connected to the connector $\xrightarrow[\text { OES the saddle stitcher controller PC board? }]{\xrightarrow{\text { on }} \text { Connect the two connectors. }}$
Is the wiring between the sensor and the saddle stitcher correct?

$\xrightarrow{\text { Is } 5 \mathrm{~V} \text { DC being supplied from J9-10 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board? }}$

[Procedure 3]
Is the connector of paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15S) connected to the connector on the saddle stitcher controller PC board?


Is the wiring between the sensor and the saddle stitcher correct?

$\xrightarrow{\text { Is } 5 \mathrm{~V} \text { DC being supplied from J9-13 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board? }}$
Is J9-14 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board properly connected to the ground?


End

## [CD6] Saddle stitcher/microswitch abnormal

[Procedure 1]
Is the switch actuator for the inlet door working properly?


Is the inlet cover switch (MS1S) working normally?


Is the voltage of J10-8 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board 5 V when the inlet door is open?


Is the voltage between J19-2 (+) and J19-1 (-) on the finisher controller PC board 24 V ? YES $\xrightarrow{N O}$ Replace the finisher controller PC board.
Check and correct the wiring between J19 on the finisher controller PC board and J1 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board. If there is no problem, replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.

## [Procedure 2]

Is the switch actuator for the front door working properly?


Is the front cover switch (MS2S) working normally?


Is the voltage of J11-12 on the saddle switcher controller PC board 5 V when the front door is opened?


Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.
[Procedure 3]
Is the switch actuator for the delivery door working properly?


Is the delivery cover switch (MS3S) working normally?


Is the voltage of J11-9 on the saddle stitcher controller PC board 5 V when the delivery door is opened?


Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.
[CD7] Communication error between finisher and saddle stitcher


Is the wiring between the finisher controller PC board and the saddle stitcher controller PC board $\xrightarrow[\text { YES }]{\text { correct? }} \xrightarrow{\text { NO }}$ Correct the wiring.
Is the voltage between $\mathrm{J} 3-2(+)$ and $\mathrm{J} 3-1(-)$ on the finisher controller PC board 24 V DC?

YES
Replace the saddle stitcher controller PC board.

## [CD9] Swing motor abnormal

[Procedure 1]
Rotate the swing motor in reverse by hand. Does the swing guide move up and down?


Is the swing guide closed detection switch-2 (MS6) working normally?


Is the swing guide open sensor (PI18) working normally?


Is the swing motor (M7) rotating in reverse at the specified timing?

[Procedure 2]
Is the safety zone switch (MS3) working normally?


Is the safety zone switch (MS3) correctly pressed?


Is the swing guide closed detection switch-2 (MS6) working normally?


Is the swing guide closed detection switch-2 (MS6) correctly pressed?


Replace the finisher controller PC board.
[Procedure 3]
Is the swing motor clock sensor (PI20) working normally?


Does the voltage between J11-6 and -7 on the finisher controller PC board become 24 V when the swing motor starts rotating?

Is the wiring between the swing motor and finisher controller PC board correct? YES $\xrightarrow{\text { NO } C o r r e c t ~ t h e ~ w i r i n g . ~}$
Replace the swing motor.

## [CDA] Horizontal registration motor abnormal



Is the wiring between the horizontal registration home position sensor (PI1P) and finisher controller PC board correct?


Is the problem solved by replacing the punch driver PC board?

NO
Replace the finisher controller PC board.

## [CDB] Punch motor abnormal



Is the wiring between the punch home position sensor (PI3P) and finisher controller PC board correct?


Is the punching mechanism normal?


Is the problem solved by replacing the punch motor (M1P)?


Is the problem solved by replacing the punch driver PC board?

NO
Replace the finisher controller PC board.

### 4.1.19 Image quality related service call

(1) After checking [CE1], [CE2] and [CE4], and taking appropriate action, perform the forced performing of image quality control.

1. While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn ON the power.
2. Enter [878] with digital keys, and then press the [START] key.
3. Turn OFF and then back ON the power, and check that the copier becomes ready normally.
(2) After confirming the items in (1), clear the abnormal detection counter of image quality control.
4. While pressing [0] and [8] simultaneously, turn ON the power.
5. Enter [415] with digital keys, and then press the [START] key.
6. Rewrite the displayed status counter from "1" ~ "16" to "0", and then press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
7. Enter [416] with digital keys, and then press the [START] key.
8. Rewrite the displayed status counter from "1" ~ "16" to " 0 ", and then press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
9. Enter [417] with digital keys, and then press the [START] key.
10. Rewrite the displayed status counter from "1" ~ "16" to " 0 ", and then press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
11. Enter [418] with digital keys, and then press the [START] key.
12. Rewrite the displayed status counter from "1" ~ "16" to "0", and then press the [SET] or [INTERRUPT] key.
13. Turn OFF and then back ON the power, and check that the copier becomes ready normally.

## [CE1] Image quality sensor abnormal (OFF level)

Is the connector of the image quality sensor, or the connector J113, J114, J115 or J119 on the LGC board, or the connector J182 on the IMC board disconnected? Is the harness between the LGC board and the image quality sensor, or the harness between the LGC board and the IMC board, or the harness between the LGC board and the switching power supply open-circuited?

Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

Is LED (D17) on the LGC board lit? Is the output voltage from the 12V-power supply normal?
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Check the power supply system and replace the switching power supply.

1. Replace the image quality sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.
3. Replace the IMC board.

## [CE2] Image quality sensor abnormal (no pattern level abnormal)

1. Check that the transfer belt unit is fully raised.
2. Check that the transfer/transport unit is securely inserted.
3. Check for any abnormal stain, large flaw or break on the transfer belt surface.
4. Check that the drum and transfer belt are operating. If abnormal, correct any mechanical problem.

Is any of the connectors $\mathrm{J} 113, \mathrm{~J} 114, \mathrm{~J} 115, \mathrm{~J} 119$ or J 123 on the LGC board disconnected? Is the connector J182 on the IMC board disconnected? Is the harness between the LGC board and the IMC board open-circuited? Is the connector of the image quality sensor disconnected or stained? Is the harness between the LGC board and the image quality sensor open-circuited? Is the main high-voltage transformer connector disconnected?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the main high-voltage transformer open-circuited?
Is the transfer transformer connector disconnected?
Is the harness between the LGC board and the transfer transformer open-circuited?
Is any of the high-voltage contact points of the transfer belt unit in faulty contact? Is any contact points stained?
Is the harness of the main high-voltage transformer or the transfer transformer disconnected or open-circuited?
$\xrightarrow{\text { YES }}$ Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness. Clean the connector or contact point. Correct the contact point.

Is LED (D17) on the LGC board lit? Is the output voltage from the 12V-power supply normal?
YES
NO
Check the power supply system, and replace the switching power supply.

1. Replace the image quality sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.
3. Replace the IMC board.

## [CE4] Image quality control test pattern abnormal

(1) Use "Image quality control abnormal detection counter $Y \sim K$ display/0 clearing (08-415~418)" to check the abnormal occurring condition for each color.
(2) Check "Output value display of image quality sensor/Low-density pattern (05-819)" to confirm if the value is under 300 (low-density pattern abnormal) for each color.


Check the transfer belt. If the cleaning is poor, correct
300 or above the transfer belt around its cleaning balde.

(3) Check "Output value display of image quality sensor/High-density pattern (05-820)" to confirm if the value is 600 or above (high-density pattern abnormal) and identify the color which pattern is abnormal.
(4) Set the values of "Image quality control 2(08-401)", "Image quality control 5(08-402)" and "Image quality control $4(08-411)$ " to " 0 " (disabled).
(5) Output the image quality control test pattern (04-270) and check the patch of the color identified in step (3) to see if the image is abnormal (image omitted, all blank, all solid, etc.). Normal

Abnormal $\longrightarrow$ Correct the items related to the image.
To (8)
(6) Replace the image quality sensor.
(7) Set the values of "Image quality control 2 (08-401)", "Image quality control 5 (08-402)" and "Image quality control 4 (08-411)" to "1" (enabled).
(8) Perform "Forced performing of image quality control (05-878)" and make sure it is completed normally (Error [CE4] does not appear).
(9) Clear all "Image quality control abnormal detection counter $\mathrm{Y} \sim \mathrm{K}$ display/0 clearing (08415~418)".
(10) If any of the specified parts has been replaced, perform "Automatic initialization of image quality control (05-879)" ( Chapter 2.3) and then perform "Automatic gamma adjustment (05-643)" ( Chapter 2.6.1).

## [CE5] Temperature/humidity sensor upper-limit abnormal

Is the harness between the LGC board and the temperature/humidity sensor disconnected? Is the connector J108 on the LGC board or the connector of the temperature/humidity sensor disconnected?

NO
YES

1. Replace the temperature/humidity sensor.
2. Replace the LGC board.
[CE6] Drum thermistor Y abnormal
[CE9] Drum thermistor K abnormal
Is the harness between the LGC board and the drawer connector for EPU disconnected? Is the harness inside of the EPU and the harness of the drum thermistor Y or K disconnected ? Is the connector J120 on the LGC board, or the connector of the drum thermistor Y or K disconnected?

NO


Reconnect the connector. Replace the harness.

1. Replace the drum thermistor Y or K .
2. Replace the LGC board.

## [CF1] Color registration control abnormal

<Check of the status of color registration sensor error>

1. While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
2. Enter [461] with digital keys and press the [START] key.
3. The color registration control result is displayed in four values $(Y(0), M(1), C(2), K(3))$.
4. Check the value for $Y(0)$ displayed in 3 ..

When [CF1] has occured, a value from 1 to 15 is displayed (normal if 0 or 16 or above).
1-14: Data error (color registration sensor is normal)
15: Reading error of color registration test pattern
<Disabling the color registration control>
5. While pressing [0] and [8] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
6. Enter [742] with digital keys and press the [START] key.
7. Set the color registration control setting to "1" (manual).
8. Enter [743] with digital keys and press the [START] key.
9. Set the color registration control during the warming-up to "0" (disabled).
10. Turn the power OFF.
<Check by the forced performing of color registration control >
11. While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
12. Enter [407] with digital keys and press the [START] key. $\rightarrow$ (Forced performing of color registration control)

* At this time, use a digital tester to monitor the test point TP91 (front color registration sensor output) and TP93 (rear color registration sensor output) on the LGC board.
- If the outputs are normal -

Before starting the forced performing of color registration control, a voltage of approximately 0.7 V DC is displayed.

After starting it, the voltage changes to approximately 4.4 V DC, and this may drop instantaneously down to 0.7 V DC. (There may be no fluctuations in voltage, depending on the reaction speed of the digital tester.)
When the forced performing of color registration control is finished, the voltage returns to approximately 0.7 V DC.

Voltage before forced performing of color registration control

| DC 0.7V | Normal |
| :--- | :--- |
| DC 0V | Check if the harness between the LGC board and the color <br> registration sensor or the harness between the LGC board and the <br> IMC board is open- or short-circuited. <br> Check if any of the connectors (J182 on the IMC board, J113 and <br> J114 on the LGC board) or the color registration sensor connector <br> is disconnected. <br> If there is no abnormality, check the color registration sensor. |
| DC 5V | Check if the harness between the LGC board and the color <br> registration sensor is open- or short-circuited. Check if any of the <br> the connectors (J113 and J114 on the LGC board) or the color <br> registration sensor connector is disconnected. |
| DC 4.4V | Check if the harness between the LGC board and the color <br> registration sensor or the harness between the LGC board and the <br> IMC board is open- or short-circuited. <br> Check if any of the connectors (J182 on the IMC board, J113 and <br> J114 on the LGC board) or the color registration sensor connector <br> is disconnected. <br> If there is no abnormality, check the color registration sensor. |

Voltage during forced performing of color registration control

| Normally DC 4.4V. <br> Instantaneously <br> may drop down to <br> 0.7 V DC |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Normally DC 0.7V | Check if there is any charge abnormality or exposure errors onto <br> the photoconductive drum (errors in the laser optical unit). Follow <br> the next check item 13. and after. |
| Normally DC 4.4V | Reading error of color registration test pattern. Follow the next check <br> item 13. and after. |

<Check by the grid pattern>
13. While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
14. Enter "1" with digital key and press the [PRINTER/NETWORK] key.
15. Check the output grid patterns of yellow, magenta, cyan and black if there is image density difference among the front/center/rear areas or abnormality in the overall image.

* At this time, there is no problem even if the $\mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{C}$ and K grid patterns are out of alignment.
- If there is difference in tonal balance between the front and rear areas -
- Check the state of contact of the photoconductive drum and the transfer belt.
- Check the quantity of developer (check whether developer material is properly supplied onto the surface of the developer sleeve).
- If there is any streak of yellow, magenta, cyan or black streak in the secondary-scanning direction -
- Check if there is any stain or dust on the main charger wire that corresponds to the color of the streak.
- If there is any white streak in the secondary-scanning direction -
- Check if there is any stain or dust on the slit glass of the laser optical unit.
- If the entire page is solid in a specific color -
- Abnormality of the main high-voltage transformer corresponding to that color or abnormalityof the laser optical unit.
Of the four main high-voltage transformers, exchange the main high-voltage transformer considered to be abnormal for other main high-voltage transformer considered to be normal, and then output the chart again.
If the solid color over the entire page changes as the result of exchanging the main high-voltage transformer, that main high-voltage transformer is abnormal.
If the solid color over the entire page does not change, check whether there is any disconnection of the harness between the LGC board and the main high-voltage transformer or whether the power supplys to the main charger (disconnection of highvoltage harness or contact defects). If there is no problem, check the laser optical unit.

If the density is low on both front and rear sides and any of the above abnormalities are not found, make the following check.
<Check by the gradation pattern>
16. While pressing [0] and [5] simultaneously, turn the power ON.
17.Enter " 4 " with digital key and press the [PRINTER/NETWORK] key.
18. Check the output gradation images for gamma adjustment if there is any abnormality in the gradation of yellow, magenta, cyan and black.

- If there are any abnormalities -
(1) Check if the photoconductive drum and transfer belt are operating. If not, correct any mechanical problems.
(2) Check if the transfer belt unit is raised fully upward.
(3) Check if the transfer/transport unit is inserted securely.
(4) Check the surface of the transfer belt for any abnormal stain, large flaw or break.
(5) Check if the connector of the transfer transformer is disconnected.
(6) Check if any of the high-voltage harnesses of the main high-voltage transformer/ transfer transformer is disconnected.
(7) Check the harness between the LGC board and the transfer transformer if it is opencircuited.
(8) Check the high-voltage contacts of the transfer belt unit if they are contacting properly or if they are not dirty.
(9) Check if any of the high-voltage harnesses is disconnected.
(10) Check if the connector $\mathrm{J} 113, \mathrm{~J} 114$ or J 119 on the LGC board is disconnected.
(11) Check if the connector $\mathrm{J} 181, \mathrm{~J} 182, \mathrm{~J} 185$ or J 188 on the IMC board is disconnected.
(12) Check if the harness between the LGC board and the color registration sensor is open-circuited.
(13) Check if the color registration sensor connector is disconnected.
(14) Check if any of the main high-voltage transformer connectors is disconnected.
(15) Check if any of the harnesses between the LGC board and the main high-voltage transformers is open-circuited.
(16) Replace the transfer transformer.
(17) Replace the main high-voltage transformer.

19. Check the sensor detection area of the transfer belt for any damage, and if damaged, replace the transfer belt.
20. Check the emitting/receiving area of the color registration sensor if it is not dirty.

* Be sure to do the following after having made checks and corrections:

1. While pressing [0] and [8] simultaneously, turn ON the power.
2. Enter [742] with digital keys and press the [START] key.
3. Set the color registration control setting to "0" (automatic).
4. Enter [743] with digital keys and press the [START] key.
5. Set the color registration control during warming-up setting to "1" (enabled).
6. Turn OFF the power.

### 4.1.20 Other service call (2)

## [F07] Communications error between system-CPU and LGC-CPU

1. Check if the SYC board is securely connected to the MTH1 board.
2. Check if the IMC board is securely connected to the MTH1 board.
3. Check if the IMC board connector J182 is disconnected.
4. Check if the LGC board connector J113 is disconnected.
5. Check if the harness between the IMC and LGC boards is open-circuited.
6. Check the version of FROM on the SYS board.
7. Check the version of MROM on the LGC board.
8. Check the version of IMC-ROM on the IMC board.
9. Replace the SYS board.
10. Replace the IMC board.
11. Replace the LGC board.

## [F10] HDD formatting error

(1) Format the HDD. (Enter "2" into 08-690)
(2) Check if the HDD is mounted.
(3) Check if the specified HDD is mounted.
(4) Check if the connector pins of the HDD are bent.
(5) Check if the power supply connector is disconnected.
(6) Check if the connector J144 on the SYS board is disconnected.
(7) Replace the HDD.
(8) Replace the SYS board.
(9) Replace the harness.
*When changing a HDD, do the following operations after replacing a new one.

1. Formatting of the HDD
<Procedure>
(1) Turen ON the power while the digital keys [0] and [8] are pressed simultaneously.
(2) Confirm that "Test Mode" is displayed on the control panel. Enter the code "690" and press the [START] key. The display changes to "System Mode".
(3) Enter "2" and press the [SET] or [INTERRRUPT] key.
(4) [WAIT] is displayed.
(5) Turn OFF the power after the message [REBOOT THE MACHINE] is displayed.
2. Downloading of the UI data
( Chapter. 5)

## [F09] [F11] [F12] Communications error between system-CPU and scanner-CPU

1. Check if the IMG board connector J161 is disconnected.
2. Check if the SCM board connector J 1 is disconnected.
3. Check if the harness between the IMG and SCM boards is open-circuited.
4. Check if the IMG board is securely connected to the MTH1 board.
5. Check if the SYS board is securely connected to the MTH1 board.
6. Check the version of FROM on the SYS board.
7. Check the version of FROM on the SCM board.
8. Replace the SYS board.
9. Replace the IMG board.
10. Replace the SCM board.

### 4.1.21 Image processing related service call

[F51] Communications error between system-CPU and AI board during pre-scanning

1. Check if the AI board is securely connected to the connector on the IMG board.
2. Check if the IMG board is securely connected to the MTH1 board.
3. Check if the SYS board is securely connected to the MTH1 board.
4. Check if FROM is mounted on the IC8 on the AI board.
5. Check if FROM is mounted in the proper direction on the AI board.
6. Replace the AI board.
7. Replace the IMG board.
8. Replace the SYS board.
9. Replace the MTH1 board.

* Service call [F51] occurs only when copying with the original mode "Al" selected. The other original modes are operable.


### 4.2 Troubleshooting of Image

(1) Color deviation
<Symptoms>

| Original mode | Location | Phenomena |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| All modes | Color blurred in outline of white text or illustration on a colored background | Color deviation | $4{ }^{4}{ }^{2}$ |
| Text mode Text/Photo mode | Outline in black text on a colored background | White void | $A B C$ |
| Photo mode Map mode | Color blurred in outline of line or text | Color deviation |  |


| Section | Step | Cause |  |  | Check Item | Criteria | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | Main-Classification | Sub-Classification | Specific-Classification | Output the built-in grid pattern on A3/LD. | Perform following procedures from 2 and after. |  |
| Color registration control | 2 | Control error or poor optimization |  |  | Check the grid pattern. | Are the grid lines out of alignment? | Forced performing of color registration control |
| Paper transport system | 3 | Paper transport speed in registration section | Low speed | Adjustment error | Check the grid pattern. | Are the lines of the primary-scanning direction out of alignment and parallel in order of $Y$-M-C-K from the exit side in the whole image? | Readjust registration motor speed. * See P. 4-68. |
|  |  |  | Low speed | Registration roller aging change |  |  | Readjust registration motor speed. * See P. 4-68. |
|  |  |  | Low speed | Registration roller life (worn out) | Check the condition of registration rubber roller surface. | Does the roller surface lack in friction and is it slippery? | Replace the registration roller. |
|  |  |  | High speed | Adjustment error | Check the grid pattern |  | Readjust registration motor speed. * See P. 4-68. |
|  | 4 | Paper transport speed in fuser unit | High speed | Adjustment error | Check the grid pattern. | Are the lines of the primary-scanning direction out of alignment and parallel in orderof-M-C-K from the exitside in the latter half of the image? | By fine adjustment (a few steps at a time), slacken paper slightly, not tighten it (to a straight line in side view) between the transfer belt and fuser unit. |
|  |  |  |  |  | Feed paper with the front door open and check the paper transport between the transfer belt and fuser unit. | Is paper tightened? |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | No problem is in normal paper mode, but in the thick paper 3 mode, deviation occurs in (Y)MCK order, at the trailing edge of A3/LD sheet. | Is paper tightened? | Increase the value of 05-408 (correction of fuser motor rotation speed for the thick paper 3 mode), by finely adjusting a few steps at a time. |
| Drum drive system | 5 | Drum rotation | Unstable | Motor abnormal | Checkdrum motor operation in the testmode (03). |  | Troubleshoot the drum drive system. |
|  |  |  |  | Control circuit abnormal | Check drum motor operation in the test mode (03). |  | Troubleshoot the drum drive system. |
|  |  | Drum motor rotation speed | Inadequate | Adjustment error | Re-check values set for drum motor rotation speed. | Is the value significantly different from the default value 1787? (The value shifts one step each in connection with transfer belt speed.) | Reset drum motor speed to 1787. |
|  |  | Drum coupling | Loose coupling |  | Check the grid pattern. |  | Tighten the screws. |
|  |  |  | Damage |  |  |  | Replace the couplings. |
|  |  |  | Deformation |  |  |  | Replace the couplings. |
| Transfer belt system | 6 | Transfer belt | Deformation or damage |  | Check the grid pattern. | Is the misalignment of the secondary-scanning direction varied? | Replace the belt (troubleshoot the transfer belt). |
|  |  |  |  |  | Check the condition of transfer belt edge. | Is the belt edge damaged or folded? |  |
|  |  | Drive roller | Slipping | Stain | Check the grid pattern. | Is the misalignment of the primary-scanning direction varied? | Clean it. |
|  |  |  |  |  | Check the condition of roller surface. | Is there any stain? |  |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Large driving } \\ & \text { load } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Used toner | Over capacity | Check the grid pattern. | Is the misalignment of the primary-scanning direction varied? | Troubleshoot the used toner system. |
|  |  |  | Cleaning blade | Peeling |  |  | Replace the cleaning blade (troubleshoot the transfebelt). |
| Laser optical unit | 7 | Tilt adjustment <br> mechanism <br> Reflection mirror <br> warp <br> ff lens characte- <br> ristic defect | Adjustment mechanism defect |  | Check the grid pattern. | Are the lines of the primary-scanning direction out of alignment at front or rear? | Replace the unit. |
|  |  |  |  |  | Check the grid pattern. | Are the lines of the primary-scanning direction warped? | Replace the unit. |
|  |  |  |  |  | Check the grid pattern. | Are the lines of the primary-scanning direction warped? | Replace the unit. |

(2) Uneven pitch and jitter image
<Symptoms>

| Original mode | Location | Phenomenon |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| All modes | Occurs cyclically at right <br> angles to paper feeding <br> direction | Uneven pitch |


| Section | Step | Cause |  |  | Check item | Criteria | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Main-Classification | Sub-Classification | Specific-Classification |  |  |  |
|  | 1 |  |  |  | Output the built-in halftone and grid patterns on $A 3 / L D$. | Perform following procedures from 2 and after. |  |
| Paper transport syetem | 2 | Paper transport speed in registration section | Low speed | Adjustment error | Check the grid pattern. | Is there uneven pitch extending 2.5 mm to 3 mm within an area about 130 mm wide from the leading edge of the image? | Readjust registration motor rotation speed. * See P. 4-68. |
|  |  |  | Low speed | Registration roller aging change |  |  | Readjust registration motor rotation speed. * See P. 4-68. |
|  |  |  | Low speed | Registration roller life (worn out) | Check the condition of registration rubber roller surface. | Does the roller surface lack in friction and is it slippery? | Replace the registration roller. |
|  |  |  | High speed | Adjustment error | Check the grid pattern. |  | Readjust registration motor rotation speed. * See P. 4-68. By fine adjustment (a few steps at a time), slacken paper slightly, not tighten it (to a straight line in side view) between the transfer belt and fuser unit. |
|  | 3 | Paper transport speed in fuser unit | High speed | Adjustment error | Check the grid pattern. | Is there uneven pitch extending approx. 2.9 mm within an area about 150 mm wide from the trailing edge of the image? |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | Feed paper with the front door open and check the paper transport between the transfer belt and fuser unit. | Is paper tightened? |  |
| Drum drive system | 4 | Drum | Surface condition |  | Check the haltone pattern. | Are there uneven pitches approx. 94 mm in the whole image? | Replace the drum. |
|  |  |  |  | Damage | Check the drum surface. | Is there any damage? | Replace the drum. |
|  |  |  |  | Attached foreign matter | Check the drum surface. | Is there any attached foreign matter? | Clean or replace the drum. |
|  | 5 | Drum rotation | Unstable | Motor abnormal | Check drum motor operation intestmode (03). |  | Troubleshoot the drum drive system. |
|  |  |  |  | Control circuit abnormal | Check drum motor operation intestmode (03). |  | Troubleshoot the drum drive system. |
|  |  | Drum motor rotation speed | Inadequate | Adjustment error | Re-check values set for drum motor rotaion speed. | Is the value significantly different from the default value 1787? (The value shifts one step each in connection with transfer belt speed) | Reset drum motor rotation speed to 1787. |
|  |  | Drum coupling | Loose coupling |  | Check the haltone pattern. |  | Re-fasten the screws. |
|  |  |  | Damage |  |  |  | Replace the couplings. |
|  |  |  | Deformation |  |  |  | Replace the couplings. |
| Transfer belt system | 6 | Drive unit | Timing belt | Tension looseness | Check the haltone pattern. | Are there uneven pitches approx. 2.5 mm in the whole image? | Re-fasten the screws to fix the tension arm. |
|  | 7 | Transfer belt | Deformation or damage |  | Check the halttone pattern. | Are there uneven pitches approx. 75 mm in the whole image? | Replace the transfer belt (troubleshoot the transfer belt). |
|  |  |  |  |  | Condition of transfer belt edge. | Is the belt edge damaged or folded? |  |
|  |  | Drive roller | Slipping | Stain | Check the halftone pattern. | Are there uneven pitches approx. 75 mm in the whole image? | Clean it. |
|  |  |  |  |  | Check the condition of roller surface. | Is there any stain? |  |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Large driving } \\ & \text { load } \end{aligned}$ | Used toner | Over capacity | Check the haltone pattern. | Are there uneven pitches approx. 75 mm in the whole image? | Troubleshoot the used toner system. |
|  |  |  | Cleaning blade | Peeling |  |  | Replace the cleaning blade (troubleshoot the transfer belt). |
| Laser optical unit | 8 | Polygonal mirror | Surface inclined | Deformation | Check the halftone pattern. | Are there uneven pitches approx. 0.3 mm in the whole image? | Replace the unit. |

* Fine adjustment of registration roller paper transport speed

The optimized value against jitter and color misalignment is not always obtained because fine error is generated in automatic adjustment.
If uneven color is generated in the secondary-scanning direction of the image and further adjustment is necessary, perform the following procedure from 1. to 7 ..

1. Start up with the test print mode (04).
2. Select the A3/LD size paper.
3. Enter the code [234] (select the halftone pattern).
4. Select [M] on the control panel and press the [START] key. Since the halftone image is to be continuously printed out, press the [STOP] key when the first sheet starts being fed, to make only one print.
5. Repeat procedures 3 . and 4 . above to print out the halftone image of cyan (C) and black (K).
6. Judge the paper transport speed status by image.

Uneven color of 2.5 mm pitch in halftone image is generated. $\rightarrow$ Paper transport speed is low.
Uneven color is partially generated at 120 mm with magenta, 195 mm with cyan and 270 mm with black from the trailing edge.
$\rightarrow$ Paper transport speed is high.
7. Adjust "Fine adjustment of registration motor rotation speed (05-410)" by one step, assuming the speed status from the grid pattern image and the image criteria in procedure 6. above. After adjusting, repeat procedures 1. to 6 . above. When the step value decreases, the paper transport speed becomes higher. When the step value increases, the paper transport speed becomes lower.
The speed should not be too low or too high because either case has harmful effect. (The step value should be approx. within $2853 \pm 30$.)
Note: First perform the adjustments "Fine adjustment of drum motor/transfer belt motor and fuser motor (05-401 to 402)", before proceeding to "Fine adjustment of registration motor rotation speed (05-410)".
If the adjustment "Registration motor speed adjustment (05-406)" is performed, the values of "Fine adjustment of registration motor rotation speed (05-410)" and "Fine adjustment of feed motor rotation speed (05-404)" are changed. Therefore, perform the settings of 05-404 again.


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Density/Color reproduction/Gray balance | 1 | Check the image density/color reproduction/gray balance. | Perform the automatic gamma adjustment. |  |
| Printer section *1 | 2 | Check the printer output image. | Output the test print pattern for each color (04-231) and check it. | See step 6 if defect occurs. |
| Parameter adjustment value *2 | 3 | Check the image processing parameters. | Adjust the color balance. Adjust the image density. |  |
| Scanner | 4 | Is the original glass or mirrors or lens dirty? | Clean it. |  |
| Printer density abnormal *1 | 5 | Check the density of printer output image. | Perform the forced performing image quality control (05-878). Output the test print pattern in each color (04-231) and check it. |  |
| Printer output image abnormal *2 | 6 | Is there any faded image (low density)? | Perform troubleshooting procedures against the faded image. |  |
|  |  | Is there any fog in the background? | Perform troubleshooting procedures against the background fogging. |  |
|  |  | Is there any blotch image? | Perform troubleshooting procedures against the blotch image. |  |
|  |  | Is there any poor transfer? | Perform troubleshooting procedures against the poor transfer. |  |
|  |  | Is there any poor cleaning of the transfer belt? <br> (Check inside the copier.) | Correct the transfer belt area. (Refer to Service Manual) |  |

[^1]

| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Density reproduction | 1 | Check the gradation reproduction. | Perform the automatic gamma adjustment. |  |
| Printer section | 2 | Check the printer output image. | Output the test print pattern for each color (04-231) and check it. | See step 5 if defects occur. |
| Parameter adjustment value | 3 | Check the image processing parameters. | Check the value of offset amount of processing background. |  |
|  | 4 | Adjust the image processing parameters. | While checking the above encircled image, adjust the reproduction level by the offset amount adjustment of processing background. |  |
| Scanner | 5 | Is the original glass or mirrors or lens dirty? | Clean it. |  |
| Auto-toner | 6 | Is the auto-toner sensor normal? | Check the operation of auto-toner sensor and readjust. |  |
|  | 7 | Is the toner supply operating constantly? | Check the motor and circuits. |  |
| Main charger output | 8 | Is the main charger output normal? | Check the circuits. * |  |
| Developer bias | 9 | Is the developer bias proper? | Check the circuits. * |  |
| Developer unit | 10 | Is the contact between the drum and developer material proper? | Check the doctor-to-sleeve gap and pole position. |  |
| Developer material | 11 | Is the developer's life finished? | Replace developer material. |  |
| Drum cleaning blade | 12 | Is it cleaned properly? | Check drum cleaning blade pressure. |  |
| Toner dusting | 13 | Is toner accumulated on the seals of the developer unit? | Remove toner and clean. |  |

* If the main charger and developer bias outputs seem to be abnormal, exchange the main high-voltage transformer of the color likely to be abnormal for another transformer of another color likely to be normal, and then, output the chart again.
If the same color remains abnormal, check if there is any disconnection of harness between the LGC board and the main high-voltage transformer, disconnection of high-voltage harness, the power supply abnormal, or stain on the main charger wire.
If the color changes as the result of exchanging the main high-voltage transformer, this fogging trouble is caused by the main high-voltage transformer defect. Therefore, replace the main high-voltage transformer of the abnormal color with new one.
After this checking, return the other main high-voltage transformer back to the original color position.


Moire

| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures | Remarks |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Density reproduction | 1 | Check the gradation <br> reproduction. | Perform the automatic gamma <br> adjustment. |  |
| Parameter adjustment <br> value | 2 | Check the image proces- <br> sing parameters. | Check the sharpness adjustment <br> value. |  |
|  | 3 | Adjust the image proces- <br> sing parameters. | While checking the above encir- <br> cled images A and B, decrease <br> moire by sharpness adjustment. |  |
| Printer section | 4 | Check the printer output <br> image. | Output the test print pattern (04- <br> 231) for each color and check it. | When defects occur, <br> perform the corres- <br> ponding trouble- <br> shooting procedures. |

## Lack of sharpness

| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures | Remarks |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Density reproduction | 1 | Check the gradation <br> reproduction. | Perform the automatic gamma <br> adjustment. |  |
| Parameter adjustment <br> value | 2 | Check the image proces- <br> sing parameters. | Check the sharpness adjustment <br> value. |  |
|  | 3 | Adjust the image proces- <br> sing parameters. | While checking the above encir- <br> cled image A, increase sharpness <br> by sharpness adjustment. |  |
| Printer section | 4 | Check the printer output <br> image. | Output the test print pattern (04- <br> 231) for each color and check it. | When defects occur, <br> perform the corres- <br> ponding trouble- <br> shooting procedures. |



Toner offset (Shadow image appears approx. 220 mm behind the high density image.)

| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Density | 1 | Is the density too high? | Perform the automatic gamma adjustment. |  |
| Fuser unit | 2 | Is the pressure between the fuser roller and lower heat roller proper? | Check the pressure removal parts and pressure mechanism. |  |
|  | 3 | Is the thermostat in contact? | Establish its contact. |  |
|  | 4 | Is there scratch on the fuser belt or lower heat roller surface? | Replace the fuser belt or the lower heat roller. |  |
|  | 5 | Is the fuser belt or lower heat roller life ended? | Replace the fuser belt or the lower heat roller. |  |
|  | 6 | Are the upper/lower heat rollers temperature proper? | Check and correct the control circuit. |  |
| Paper | 7 | Check the paper type and mode. | Select proper paper type and mode. |  |
|  | 8 | Is non-recommended paper used? | Use recommended paper. |  |
| Developer material | 9 | Is the specified developer used? | Use the specified developer and toner. |  |
| Scanner | 10 | Are mirrors or original glass or lens dirty? | Clean them. |  |
| Printer section | 11 | Check the printer output image. | Output the test print pattern (04231) and check it. | See steps 12 and 13 if defect occurs. |
| Printer density abnormal* | 12 | Is the density of printer output image too high? | Perform the image quality control forcibly (05-878). Output and check the test print pattern (04-231). | Repeat 2-3 times if necessary. |
| Image quality control | 13 | Is the control activated? | Check the image quality control related codes. |  |

*When adjusting printer section, perform "image quality control forced performing" and then "automatic gamma adjustment".


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Scanner | 1 | Is the scanner bedewed? | Clean it. |
| Drum | 2 | Is the drum bedewed or dirty? | Wipe the drum with dry cloth. <br> * Be sure never use alcohol or other orga- <br> nic solvents because they have bad effect <br> on the drum. |



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Heater lamp unlighted | 1 | Is poor contact at the terminal point? | Correct it. |
|  | 2 | Is the heater lamp open-circuited? | Replace it. |
| Pressure between <br> fuser roller and low- <br> er heat roller improper | 3 | Are the pressure springs working <br> properly? | Check/adjust the pressure springs. |
| Thermistor, LGC board | 4 | Is the temperature of upper/lower heat <br> rollers too low? | Check/correct the related circuit. |
| Paper | 5 | Is paper damp? | Change paper. |



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (transfer roller/ <br> developer bias) | 1 | Is the high-voltage transformer output <br> defective? | Adjust the output and correct the circuit, or <br> replace the transformer. |
| Processing unit (EPU)/ <br> developer unit set position | 2 | Is the processing unit (EPU) or the <br> developer unit installed securely? | Check/correct the developer sleeve coupling <br> engaging. Check the EPU sliding mechanism. |
| Developer drive system | 3 | Do the developer sleeve and mixer rotate? | Check/correct the developer drive system. |
| Developer material | 4 | Is developer material properly <br> transported? | Remove foreign matter from developer <br> material, if any. |
| Developer pole position | 5 | Is there any magnetic brush phase error? | Check the developer pole position. |
| Doctor blade position | 6 | Is the doctor sleeve gap incorrect? | Adjust the gap with the doctor-sleeve jig. |
| Drum | 7 | Is the drum rotating? | Check that the drum shaft is inserted. <br> Check the drum drive system. |
| Harnesses for SCM, <br> SYS, IMG, IMC and LGC <br> boards | 8 | Are the connectors securely connected? <br> Is any harness between the boards <br> open-circuited? | Re-connect the connectors securely. <br> Replace the harness. |

(10) Solid copy


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Exposure lamp Inverter | 1 | Does the exposure lamp light? | Check the contact of the inverter connector. If the inverter does not work, replace it. If the lamp does not work, replace it. |
| Main charger | 2 | Is the main charger securely installed? | Reinstall it securely. |
|  | 3 | Is the main charger wire open-circuited? | Replace it. |
| High-voltage transformer (Main charger) | 4 | Is the high-voltage transformer output defective? | Adjust the output and correct the circuit, or replace the high-voltage transformer. |
| Harnesses for SCM, SYS, IMG, IMC and LGC boards | 5 | Are the connectors securely connected? Is any harness between the boards open-circuited? | Re-connect the connectors securely. Replace the harness. |
| Scanner | 6 | Is there foreign matter in the optical path? | Remove it. |
| Bedewing of scanner and drum | 7 | Is the scanner or the drum bedewed? | Clean the mirrors, lens and drum. Keep the power cord plugged so that the damp heater can work. |

(11) White banding (in feeding direction)


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Laser optical unit | 1 | Is there foreign matter or dust on the <br> slit glass? | Clean the slit glass. |
| Main charger grid | 2 | Is there foreign matter on the charger <br> grid? | Remove foreign matter. |
| Developer unit | 3 | Is there foreign matter inside the <br> doctor blade? | Remove foreign matter. |
|  | 4 | Is there foreign matter on the drum <br> seal? | Remove foreign matter. |
|  | 5 | Is the drum seal of developer unit in <br> proper contact with the drum? | Modify the position of drum seal or replace it. |
| Drum | 6Is there any abnormalities on the <br> drum surface? | Replace the drum. |  |
| Transport path | 7 | Does the toner image touch foreign <br> matter after transfer, before entering <br> the fuser unit? | Remove foreign matter. |
| Discharge lamp | 8 | Has any LED of discharge lamp gone <br> out? | Replace the discharge lamp. |
| Scanner | 9 | Is there foreign matter or dust in the <br> optical path | Clean the lens and mirrors. |

(12) White banding (at right angles to feeding direction)


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Main charger | 1 | Is there foreign matter on the charger? | Remove foreign matter. |
|  | 2 | Is terminal contact poor? | Clean or adjust terminals. |
| Drum | 3 | Is there any abnormalities on the <br> drum surface? | Replace the drum. |
| Discharge lamp | 4 | Is the discharge lamp lighting <br> properly? | Replace the discharge lamp or clean term- <br> inals. |
| Developer unit | 5 | Is the developer sleeve rotating <br> correctly? Is there any abnormalities <br> on the sleeve surface? | Check the developer drive system, or clean <br> the sleeve surface. |
| Drum and scanner <br> drive systems | 6 | Is the drum or scanner jittery? | Check each drive system. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (main charger and <br> transfer roller) | 7 | Is the high-voltage transformer output <br> defective? | Check/correct any electric leakage and <br> related circuits. <br> If the high-voltage transformer does not work, <br> replace it. |

(13) Skew (slantwise copying)


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Cassette LCF | 1 | Is the cassette or LCF properly installed? | Reinstall the cassette or LCF properly. |
|  | 2 | Is too much paper loaded in the cassette or LCF? | Reduce paper to 600 sheets or less. (1500 sheets or less for LCF) |
|  | 3 | Is the paper corner folded? | Change the paper direction and reinsert it. |
|  | 4 | Are cassette or LCF side guides properly set? | Adjust side guides. |
| Paper feed roller | 5 | Is the surface of paper feed roller dirty? | Clean the roller surface with alcohol, or replace the roller. |
| Rollers | 6 | Is each roller improperly fixed to the shaft? | Check and fasten E-rings, pins, clips and setscrews. |
| Registration roller | 7 | Is the registration roller spring out of place? | Mount the spring correctly. Clean the roller if it is dirty. |
| Pre-registration guide | 8 | Is the pre-registration guide improperly installed? | Correct it. |
| Original scale | 9 | Is the original scale slanted? | Adjust it. |

(14) Color banding (in feeding direction)


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Scanner | 1 | Is there foreign matter in the optical path? | Clean the slit, lens and mirrors. |
|  | 2 | Is there dust or stain on the shading correction plate? | Clean the plate. |
| Main charger | 3 | Is there foreign matter on the charger grid? | Remove foreign matter. |
|  | 4 | Is the charger grid dirty or deformed? | Clean or replace the charger grid. |
|  | 5 | Is there foreign matter on the main charger? | Remove foreign matter. |
|  | 6 | Is the charger wire dirty or deformed? | Clean or replace the charger wire. |
|  | 7 | Is there foreign matter inside the charger case? | Remove foreign matter. |
|  | 8 | Is the inner surface of charger case dirty? | Clean inside. |
| Cleaner | 9 | Is there paper dust on the cleaning blade edge? | Clean or replace the paper dust removal brush for the registration roller. <br> Clean or replace the cleaning blade. |
|  | 10 | Is the cleaning blade contact improper? | Correct it. |
|  | 11 | Is toner recovery defective? | Clean the toner recovery auger section. |
| Fuser unit | 12 | a. Is there dirt or scratches on the fuser belt and lower heat roller surface? <br> b. Is the thermistor dirty? | a. Clean or replace them. <br> b. Clean the thermistor. |
| Drum | 13 | Are there scratches on the drum surface? | Replace the drum. |
| Laser optical unit | 14 | Is there foreign matter or dust on the slit glass? | Remove foreign matter or dust. |

(15) Color banding (at right angles to feeding direction)


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Main charger | 1 | Is the charger wire dirty or deformed? | Clean or replace the charger wire. |
| Fuser unit | 2 | Is the fuser belt, lower heat roller or <br> oil roller dirty? | Clean them. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (main charger/ <br> transfer roller) | 3 | Is the high-voltage transformer output <br> defective? | Check the circuit and replace the high-voltage <br> transformer if not working. |
| Drum | 4 | Is there deep scratch on the drum <br> surface? | Replace the drum, especially if the scratch <br> has reached the aluminum base. |
|  | 5 | Are there fine scratches on the drum <br> surface (drum pitting)? | Check and correct the contact of cleaning <br> blade and recovery blade. |
| Scattered toner recove- <br> ry roller of developer <br> unit | 6 | Is electrical continuity secured <br> between the developer bias supply <br> spring and the recovery roller? | If not, replace the developer bias supply <br> spring. |
| Scanner carriage section | 7 | ss there foreign matter on the carriage <br> rail? | Remove foreign matter. |

(16) White spots


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Developer unit/ <br> Toner cartridge | 1 | Is the toner density of developer <br> material proper? | Check and correct the auto-toner sensor and <br> toner supply operation. <br> Check whether the amount of toner is sufficient <br> in the toner cartridge. |
|  | 2 | Is the doctor-sleeve gap proper? | Adjust the gap. |
| Main charger | 3 | Is there foreign matter on the charger? | Remove it. |
|  | 4 | Is the charger wire dirty or deformed? | Clean or replace the charger wire. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (main charger/ develo- <br> per bias/transfer roller) | 5 | Is the high-voltage transformer output <br> defective? | Adjust the output. |
| Developer material | 6 | Is the developer material life ended? | Replace developer material. |



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Transfer belt | 1 | Is the transfer belt dirty? | Clean it. |
|  | 2 | Is the transfer belt in proper contact with the drum? | Correct it. |
|  | 3 | Is there any deformation or abnormalities on the transfer belt? | Replace the belt. |
| Paper | 4 | Is paper in the cassette or LCF curled? | Reinsert paper with reverse side up or change paper. |
|  | 5 | Is paper in the cassette or LCF damp? | Change paper. <br> * Avoid storing paper in damp place. |
| Registration roller | 6 | Is the registration roller malfunctioning? | Clean the roller, re-mount the spring, or replace defective clutch-related parts. Readjust the roller speed. |
| High-voltage transformer (transfer roller) | 7 | Is the high-voltage transformer output defective? | Check the circuit and adjust the transformer output. |



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main charger | 1 | Is the main charger dirty? | Clean it or replace the charger wire. |
| Transfer belt | 2 | Is the transfer belt dirty? | Clean the belt. |
|  | 3 | Is the transfer belt in proper contact with the drum? | Correct it. |
|  | 4 | Is there any abnormalities or deformation on the belt? | Replace the belt. |
| Laser optical unit | 5 | Is there foreign matter or dust on the slit glass? | Clean the slit glass. |
| Discharge lamp | 6 | Is the discharge lamp dirty? | Clean it. |
|  | 7 | Has any LED of discharge lamp gone out? | Replace it. |
| Developer unit | 8 | Is the magnetic brush in proper contact with the drum? | Adjust the doctor-sleeve gap. |
|  | 9 | Is the developer unit pressure mechanism malfunctioning? | Check the mechanism. |
|  | 10 | Is the transport of developer material poor? | Remove foreign matter if any. |
| Scanner section | 11 | a. Is the platen cover open? <br> b. Are original glass, mirrors, or lens dirty? | a. Close the platen cover. <br> b. Clean them. |

(19) Faded image (low density, poor color reproduction and poor gray balance)


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Toner empty | 1 | Is the "ADDTONER" symbol flashing? | Replace the toner cartridge. |
| Auto-toner circuit | 2 | Is there enough toner in the cartridge? | Check the auto-toner circuit function. |
|  | 3 | Is the toner density of developer <br> material too low? |  |
| Toner motor | 4 | Is the toner motor malfunctioning? | Check the motor drive circuit. |
| Toner cartridge | 5 | Are there any abnormalities in the <br> toner cartridge? | Replace the toner cartridge. |
| Developer material | 6 | Is the developer material life ended? | Replace developer material. |
| Developer unit | 7 | Is the magnetic brush in proper <br> contact with the drum? | Check the developer unit installation. <br> Check the doctor-sleeve gap and pole <br> position. |
| Main charger | 8 | Is the main charger dirty? | Clean it or replace the charger wire. |
| Drum | 9 | Is there film forming on the drum <br> surface? | Clean or replace the drum. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (developer bias) | 10 | Is the high-voltage transformer output <br> settings improper? | Adjust the high-voltage transformer output. |

(20) Image dislocation in feeding direction


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Adjustment error of <br> scanner or printer section | 1 | Is same dislocation on every copy? | Adjust the scanner/printer using the <br> adjustment mode. |
| Registration roller | 2 | Is the registration roller dirty, or the <br> spring out of place? | Clean the roller with alcohol. <br> Reinstall the spring. |
|  | 3 | Is the registration motor mal- <br> functioning? | Adjust or replace the gears, etc. if they are not <br> engaged properly. |
| Paper feed motor | 4 | Is the paper feed motor mal- <br> functioning? | Check the circuit or the motor and replace <br> them if necessary. |
| Pre-registration guide | 5 | Is the pre-registration guide <br> improperly installed? | Reinstall the guide. |



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | Is the toner image on the drum <br> proper? | If proper, perform step 1 to 3; otherwise per- <br> form step 4 and after. |
| Registration roller | 1 | Is the registration roller rotating <br> normally? | Check the registration roller section and its <br> springs. |
| Transfer belt | 2 | Is the transfer belt operating normally? | Check the drive system and replace the <br> transfer belt if necessary. |
| Fuser unit | 3 | Are the upper/lower heat rollers and <br> fuser roller rotation proper? <br> Is the fuser belt transportation proper? | Check the drive system. <br> Replace the fuser belt, upper/lower heat <br> rollers and fuser roller if necessary. |
| Drum | 4 | Is there large scratch on the drum? | Replace the drum. |
| Carriage operation | 5 | Is the slider sheet defective? | Replace it. |
|  | 6 | Are there any abnormalities on the <br> carriage feet? | Replace the feet. |
|  | 7 | Is the tension of timing belt in- <br> appropriate? | Adjust the tension. |
|  | 8 | Is the carriage drive system mal- <br> functioning? | Check the carriage drive system. |
| Scanner | 9 | Are any mirrors loosely installed? | Install them properly. |
| Drum drive system | 10 | Is the drum drive system mal- <br> functioning? | Check the drum drive system. <br> Clean or replace the belts, pulleys, bushings <br> if they have dirt or scratches. |
| Processing unit (EPU) | 11 | Is the EPU load too high? | Check the EPU. |



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Developer material | 1 | Is the specified developer material used? | Use the specified developer material and toner. |
| Cleaning blade | 2 | Is there paper dust on the cleaning blade edge? | Clean it. |
|  | 3 | Is the cleaning blade peeled? | Replace the blade. Check and replace the drum. |
| Toner recovery auger | 4 | Is toner recovery defective? | Clean toner recovery auger. Check the cleaning blade pressure. |
| Fuser unit | 5 | Is the cleaning roller or the oil roller damaged or their life ended? | Replace the defective rollers. |
|  | 6 | Is there any bubble-like defect on the fuser belt ( 220 mm pitch on the copy)? | Replace the fuser belt. Check and modify the heater control circuit. |
|  | 7 | Are the fuser belt and the lower heat roller life ended? | Replace them. |
|  | 8 | Is the pressure between the fuser roller and the lower heat roller proper? | Check and adjust the pressure mechanism. |
|  | 9 | Is the temperature of upper/lower heat rollers proper? | Check and correct the circuit. |

(23) Uneven light distribution

## 1 <br> Feeding direction



| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Original glass | 1 | Is the original glass dirty? | Clean the glass. |
| Main charger wire | 2 | Is the main charger wire dirty? | Clean or replace the wire. |
| Discharge lamp | 3 | Is the discharge lamp dirty? | Clean it. |
| Scanner | 4 | Are the reflector, exposure lamp, <br> mirrors, lens, etc. dirty? | Clean them. |
| Exposure lamp | 5 | Is the exposure lamp tilted? | Adjust the installed position of the lamp. |
|  | 6 | Is the lamp discolored or degraded? | Replace it. |

(24) Blotched image


| Cause/Section | Step | Check items | Measures |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Paper | 1 | Does the paper mode correspond to <br> the paper type? | Check the paper type and mode. |
|  | 2 | Is paper too dry? | Change paper. |
| Transfer belt | 3 | Is the transfer belt in proper contact <br> with the drums? | Correct it. |
|  | 4 | Are there any abnormalities on the <br> belt? | Clean or replace the belt. |
| High-voltage transformer <br> (transfer roller) | 5 | Is the high-voltage transformer output <br> abnormal? | Adjust the output. Replace the transformer, if <br> necessary. |

## 5. UPDATING THE FIRMWARE

<<Caution>>
Only the minimum firmware required for updating by the PC is installed in the system control PC board (SYS board), printer control PC board (IMC board), logic PC board (LGC board) and scanner control PC board (SCM board) provided as service parts.

When any of the above PC boards is replaced with a new one in the field, confirm the other firmware version to ensure the most suitable firmware is installed.

* Never use an unsuitable combination of firmware since it can cause abnormalities.
- The official name of Windows 95 is Microsoft Windows 95 Operating System.
- The official name of Windows 98 is Microsoft Windows 98 Operating System.
- Microsoft, Windows and the brand names and product names of other Microsoft products are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Copyright on the software of Windows 95/98 are held by US Microsoft Corporation.
- Some of the screens used in this manual to describe operations are of Windows 95/98.


### 5.1 Installing Software for Firmware Update

### 5.1.1 Outline

The procedure to update the software of the SYS, IMC, LGC and SCM board using the PPP (Point-toPoint Protocol) and FTP (File Tranfer Protocol) is described in this section.
*This procedure is described based on the Windows 95/98. Information and necessary files corresponding to other OSs are supplied by the other service information.

### 5.1.2 Requirements

The following environment is necessary to update the firmware.


Software Requirements for PC
-Microsoft Windows95/98
-Virtual modem
-FTP Server / tools (ex. War FTP Daemon)
Use a serial cable for the DTE-DTE connection to connect the PC and SYS board.
(Update cannot be performed with the cable for the DCE-DCE connection)
See below for the connection lines.
9 Cl $\qquad$ CI 9

| Pin No. | Signal | Meaning | I/O |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 1 | CD | Reception carrier detection | I |
| 2 | RXD | Reception data | I |
| 3 | TXD | Transmission data | O |
| 4 | DTR | Data terminal ready | O |
| 5 | GND | Signal ground |  |
| 6 | DSR | Data setting ready | I |
| 7 | RTS | Transmission request | O |
| 8 | CTS | Transmission enabled | I |
| 9 | Cl | Called indication | I |

RS232C DTE-DTE Cross Cable Lines (D-SUB 9pin)

Protocol specifications between the PC and SYS board

| BAUD RATE | 115200 bps |
| :--- | :--- |
| DATA BIT | 8 BITS |
| PARITY | NONE |
| STOP BIT | 1 BIT |
| FLOW CONTROL | NONE |
| ECHO | OFF |

### 5.1.3 Dial-up networking function

The settings necessary for the PPP are described in this section. The dial-up networking function is used to perform the PPP connection on the Windows 95/98.
(1) Virtual modem

Since a modem is supposed to be used for the Windows 95/98 dial-up networking, download a virtual modem to enable the connection performed directly with a serial cable.
(2) Installation of virtual modem

Download the following file from the web.

## URL:http://www.kevin-wells.com/net/mdmcbx4.inf

After the above file was downloaded, install the modem as follows.

Click the "Modems" button on the Control Panel to display the following window, then click [Add].


The Modem Wizard is opened.
Check "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list", and click [Next].


Click [Have Disk], then select a folder in which the downloaded file has been stored.


Select "Direct Connection", then click [Next].


Select "Communications Port (COM1)", then click [Next].


Click the [Finish] button to complete the virtual modem installation.


### 5.1.4 Installing dial-up networking

Your computer might be already set up to use a network. If the Windows prompts you for a network password at the startup and if the Network Neighborhood icon appears on the Windows desktop, the network function is already set up. In this case, you can skip this section.

In the "Network" dialog box, click the "Configuration" tab.
Confirm that "Dial-Up Adapter" and "TCP/IP" are displayed.


If your PC does not have "Dial-Up Adapter", click [Add].

Select "Microsoft" from the "Manufacturers" list and "Dial-Up Adapter" from the "Network Adapters" list, then click [OK].

TCP/IP Protocol components are automatically installed together with "Dial-Up Adapter".


### 5.1.5 Setting dial-up networking

Double-click "My Computer". If the "Dial-Up Networking" icon is not in the window, open [Add/Remove Programs] in the Control Panel to install it.


Double-click "Dial-up Networking" and then "Make New Connection".


Enter a name in the box "Type a name for the computer you are dialing", and then select "Direct Connection" for "Select a device". Then, click [Configure].


Click the "General" tab in the "Direct Connection Properties" dialog box. Select "115200" for "Maximum speed", and check "Only connect at this speed".


Click the "Connection" tab, confirm that no item in "Call preferences" is selected, and then click [Advanced].


Confirm that no item in the "Advanced Connection Settings" dialog box is selected. Click the [OK] button to return to the "Make New Connection" dialog box and click [Next].



Enter "\#39" in the "Telephone number" box.
Select an appropriate country code, then click [Next].


Click [Finish] to complete the setting for the "Dial-up Networking".

### 5.1.6 Installing software for FTP server

Install free software [War FTP Daemon Version 1.65] to use it as an FTP server.
War FTP Daemon can be downloaded from the following website.

FTP: ftp://ftp.jgaa.com/pub/products/Windows/WarFtpDaemon/1.6_Series/ward165.exe HTTP: http://download.jgaa.com/ftp/pub/products/Windows/WarFtpDaemon/1.6_Series/ward165.exe

Some files are extracted by double-clicking the [ward165.exe] icon. Double-click [Setup.exe] to start installation

Create a new folder "C:\WEBSHARE\FTPROOT".

Double-click [war-ftpd.exe] in the [war-ftpd] folder.


Select [Properties]-[Security]-[Edit User].


Click [Add] and type in "dppc" in the "New name" box.


Type in "dppc" in the "New Password" and "Verify Password" boxes, then click [OK].


Select "dppc" and click the "File Access" tab. Then, click [Add].


Double-click "Webshare".


Double-click "Ftproot" and click [OK].


Check the "Read", "Write", "Delete", "Execute", "List", "Create" and "Remove" boxes. Confirm that the check marks are not gray but black.

Check "Root", "Home" and "Recursive" in the "Special" box as well. Click [Apply] and then [OK].


Enter the "ONLINE" mode by clicking the $\$$ button before starting the firmware update.


### 5.2 Operation Procedure in [3][9] Mode

### 5.2.1 Outline

Connect the copier and PC with a serial cable and turn ON the power while pressing the digital keys [3] and [9] simultaneously to start the "Firmware Update Mode". The system firmware, UI data and engine firmware (printer ROM, engine ROM and scanner ROM) can be updated in this mode.

Note: In the [3] [9] mode, the version of system firmware and UI data can be displayed, but the version of engine firmware cannot be displayed. Therefore, confirm the version of engine firmware in the setting mode (08).

### 5.2.2 Preparation

The following need to be prepared or performed in advance to update the firmware.
(1) Software installation
"Virtual modem" and "War FTP Daemon" have to be installed in the PC.
Refer to "5.1 Installing Software for Firmware Update"
"War FTP Daemon" has to be in the "ONLINE" mode when updating the firmware.
(2) New file

Prepare files for updating in the PC.
New files with the preset directory and names are provided in the following folder.

C:IWEBSHARE\FTPROOT


New files:

- System firmware
- UI data fixed section
- UI data common section
- 1st language UI data
- 2nd language UI data
- 3rd language UI data
- 4th language UI data
- 5th language UI data
- 6th language UI data
- 7th language UI data (American English)
- Engine firmware (Engine ROM)
- Engine firmware (Printer ROM)
- Engine firmware (Scanner ROM)
sysfirm.tz
uidataF.tz
uidata0.tz
uidata1.tz
uidata2.tz
uidata3.tz
uidata4.tz
uidata5.tz
uidata6.tz
uidata7.tz
mfirm.tz
imcfirm.tz
scmfirm.tz
(3) Connection between the SYS board and PC

The SYS board and PC are connected with a cross cable.
For the PC, connect the cable to the connnector corresponding to the serial communication port (eg. COM1) which is specified when the virtual modem is set up.
For the SYS board, connect the cable to the MMF(FSMS) port.

Note: Do not connect serial cable with machine power turned ON.

### 5.2.3 Updating firmware

Update the firmware in the [3][9] mode as follows:

1. Turn ON the power of the copier while the digital keys [3] and [9] are pressed simultaneously.
2. The following is displayed on the control panel of the copier.

| Firmware Version Up Mode |
| :--- | :--- |
| > Make a connection from PC. |
|  |
|  |

3. Make a serial connection using the dial-up networking function of the PC.

Refer to "5.1 Installing Software for Firmware Update" for the dial-up network connection.
Double-click the defined icon for connection in the "Dial-up Networking" dialog box to perform the connection processing.


4. The following is displayed if the serial connection was completed successfully.


You can press [HELP] to confirm the current version (the version before the copier is updated).
*The engine firmware version cannot be displayed in this screen. Use the setting mode to confirm them.

08-902: Engine ROM version (LGC)
08-903: Printer ROM version (IMC)
08-904: Scanner ROM version (SCM)
Press [HELP] again to return to the above screen.

```
Firmware Version Up Mode
Established serial connection with PC.
\begin{tabular}{cll|l} 
target & version & code & \\
1 & 005.101 & U & \\
2 & 004.001 & 0 & \\
3 & 005.002 & 0 & One of the following is \\
displayed: U, E or X
\end{tabular}
        4 006.001 6
        5 006.001 7
        6 006.003 11
    Press START key to next.
```

[START] key

```
Firmware Version Up Mode
Established serial connection with PC
    target version code
        7 006.001 8
        8 006.001 10
        9 006.002 13
        10 006.001 3
    Press START key to previous.
```

The "target" number indicates the following.
1: System firmware
2: UI data fixed section
3: UI data common section
4: 1st language UI data
5: 2nd language UI data
6: 3rd language UI data
7: 4th language UI data
8: 5th language UI data
9: 6th language UI data
10:7th language UI data

The version number is displayed as "XXX. YYY ".
" XXX " indicates the major version and " $Y Y Y$ " is the minor version.

The "code" indicates the following.
A. The "code" for the System firmware ("target": 1) denotes the destination.

U: USA and Canada
E: European countries
X: Australia and Asian countries
B. The "code" for the UI data ("target": 2-10) denotes the language.

| Code | Language | Code | Language |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 2 | Japanese | 13 | Finnish |
| 3 | American English | 14 | Norwegian |
| 4 | English | 15 | Australian English |
| 5 | - | 16 | Polish |
| 6 | French | 17 | Czech |
| 7 | German | 18 | Greek |
| 8 | Swedish | 19 | Romanian |
| 9 | Dutch | 20 | Bulgarian |
| 10 | Italian | 21 | Portuguese |
| 11 | Spanish | 22 | Hungarian |
| 12 | Danish | 23 | - |

5. Select the area to be updated using the digital keys and [INTERRUPT] key.
(Press the [INTERRUPT] key to enter "\#".)
The selected number is displayed at upper right of the screen, next to "Target:".
The relation between the selected number and area to be updated is as follows.
1 : System firmware
2 : UI data fixed section
3 : UI data common section
4 : 1st language UI data
5 : 2nd language UI data
6 : 3rd language UI data
7 : 4th language UI data
8 : 5th language UI data
9 : 6th language UI data
10: 7th language UI data
11: Engine firmware (Engine ROM)
12 : Engine firmware (Printer ROM)
13 : Engine firmware (Scanner ROM)
\#1: System firmware and all UI data (1 to 10)
\#2 : All UI data (2 to 10)
\#3 : All language UI data (4 to 10)
\#4: All data (1 to 13)
\#5 : Engine firmware (Engine ROM and printer ROM) (11 and 12)
6. The copier starts updating when the [START] key is pressed.

Do not turn OFF the power of the copier or PC, or disconnect the cable after the [START] key has been pressed.
Interruption during the file transmisson to the copier will destroy the file in the FROM of the copier. The data must be reinstalled after checking and performing the following items.

- Connect the serial cable correctly.
- Restart the copier and PC.
- Change the "War FTP Daemon" to "ONLINE" mode.
- Copy the new files to the PC again.

In case of target 1-13:


* During writing the data corresponding to the target 11-13, the transmission rate is displayed.
- writing to the divice.
xxxxx/Xxxxx — transmitted / total (byte)

7. The following will be displayed when the firmware update is completed successfully. In case of target 1-13:
If you continue to update the other areas, press the [START] key and perform the step 5 and the followings for each area.
Turn OFF the power or press the [CLEAR] key to exit the update screen.


In case of target \#1- \#5:
The following is displayed when the updating is finished.

8. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the updating process.

However, it cannot be canceled once the data elimination process on the flash ROM is started.

| Firmware Version Up Mode |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Program canceled. |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

9. The following error message is displayed when the firmware was not updated successfully. (If "- device erase error", "- device write error" or "- verify error" occurs, the "Recovery mode" is automatically activated when the power is turned ON next time. See 10.: Recovery mode)

10. Recovery mode

The following is displayed when the power is turned OFF and then back ON after an error has occurred during the updating process.

```
Firmware Version Up Mode
Recovery mode : target 3-10 failed.
> make a connection from PC
```

The display changes as follows if the dial-up network connection (see procedure 3) was made successfully.

| Firmware Version Up Moder |
| :--- |
| Recovery mode : target 3-10 failed. |
| > Press START key to install new firmwares. |
|  |
|  |
|  |

Further operations and displays are the same as those of the normal sequence.

* If an error occurs while the processing of automatically sequenced writing of \#4, do the following operations after completing the update in a recovery mode.

| Target | Area of error | Operation |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| $\# 4$ | $1 \sim 10$ | After completing the update to the target 10 in a recovery mode, update the <br> target 11 to 13 in a writing processing with the area definition. |
| $\# 4$ | $11 \sim 12$ | After completing the update to the target 12 in a recovery mode, update the <br> target 13 in a writing processing with the area definition. |

### 5.2.4 Display

The following screens are displayed in the mode [3][9].


In case of target 1-13:


| Firmware Version Up Mode | Version of the firmware installed |
| :--- | :--- |
| Firmware version up completed. |  |
| Version: 001.003 code: © (U) |  |



| Firmware Version Up Moder |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| > Press START key to install new firmwares. |  |
|  |  |
| > Please select a target with DIGITAL keys. |  |

Press the digital key

Display changes corresponding to the keys pressed

In case target of \#1- \#5:


In case of target of 1-13:


In case of target \#1-\#5:


### 5.3 Updating the Firmware Using the Downloading Jig

In this model, it is possible to update the firmware automatically by connecting the downloading jig using the dedicated connector and turning the power of the copier ON.
The downloading jig consists of the programmed ROM and jig board. Two types of the jig board are available as follows.

| Firmware | PC board | Jig board to be used |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| System firmware | System control PC board (SYS board) | K-PWA-DLS-320 |
| Engine firmware <br> (engine ROM, scanner ROM and <br> printer ROM) | Logic PC board (LGC board) |  |
|  | Scanner control PC board (SCM board) | K-PWA-DLM-320 |
|  | Printer control PC board (IMC board) |  |


[Jig board (K-PWA-DLS-320)]

[Jig board (K-PWA-DLM-320)]

### 5.3.1 System firmware

(1) ROM type

There are two types of ROM to be downloaded.
(a) ROM for application downloading

The area in the FROM on the SYS board is updated. This ROM is used for the normal update.

The data to be overwritten by this ROM are as follows.

- System software basic section
*This area cannot be downloaded using PC.
- Program internal application
- Ul data fixed section
- UI data common section
- Language(UI) on the display panel


## (b) ROM for UI data downloading

The language data in the HDD are updated.

The data to be updated by this ROM are as follows.

- Ul data: The 1st to 7th languages

When downloading is performed using the ROM for UI data downloading, only UI data in the HDD are updated.
To make the result of updating effective, it is necessary to copy the updated data into the FROM by selecting a desired language in the setting mode "Selection of language(UI) on the display panel (08220)".
(2) Jig board

Two types of the ROM mentioned above use the jig board K-PWA-DLS-320.
( Page.5-32)

Note: Pay attention to the position and direction of the ROM when it is attached to the jig board.
(3) Procedure of downloading

## (a) Connect the jig and perform downloading

Attach the ROMs on the jig board and connect the board with the connector of the copier.

1. Take off the feed side upper and upper inner cover as well as the metal shield cover.
( - Service Manual ch. 2.5.2)
2. Connect the downloading jig with the jig connector on the SYS board (ROM attached side downward).

Note: Turn OFF the power before connecting or disconnecting the jig.


Turn ON the power (downloading is automatically started).

Note: Do not turn OFF the power during the downloading.

The processing status is displayed on the control panel during the downloading.

| Download Board Firmware Update Mode |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Download Board $->$ FROM Update Start. |  |
|  |  |
| Check Devices | - |
| Update FROM | - |
| Dataleted |  |
| Data Check | - |
|  |  |
|  |  |

"Update Completed!!" is displayed on the control panel when the downloading is completed.
Turn OFF the power of the copier and disconnect the downloading jig.

```
Download Board Firmware Update Mode
Download Board -> FROM Update Start.
    Check Devices - Completed
    Update FROM - Completed
    Data Check - Completed
```

        Update Completed!!
    "Update Failed." is displayed on the control panel when the downloading was not completed successfully. Turn OFF the power, check the downloading jig and copier and attempt the downloading again.

```
Download Board Firmware Update Mode
Download Board -> FROM Update Start.
    Check Devices - Completed
    Update FROM - Failed
    Data Check
        Update Failed.
```

Note: Check the following in case that the downloading was not performed successfully.

- Check if the ROM is attached properly.
- Check if the ROM data were written correctly.
- Check if the downloading jig is connected properly.
- Check if the HDD is connected properly. (for UI data downloading)

When the UI data and the applications are updated at the same time, perform the downloading successively.

When UI data downloading is performed, the UI data in the HDD are updated but the display UI at power ON in the FROM is not changed. To make the result of updating effective for the display UI at power ON, it is necessary to copy the updated data into the FROM by selecting a language in the setting mode (08-220).

## (b) Confirmation of the downloaded data

Check each data version when the downloading is completed to confirm that the downloading was performed correctly. Check the version in the setting mode (08). Confirm that the version numbers shown by entering the following codes match the specified version numbers.

Confirmation for application downloading:
08-900 : System firmware version
08-920 : Basic section software version
08-921 : Program internal (application) version
08-922 : Ul data fixed section version
08-923 : Ul data common section version
08-930 : Version of language(UI) on the display at power ON in FROM

Confirmation for UI data downloading:
08-924 :Version of UI data 1 st language in HDD
08-925 : Version of UI data 2nd language in HDD
08-926 : Version of Ul data 3rd language in HDD
08-927 : Version of UI data 4th language in HDD
08-928 : Version of UI data 5th language in HDD
08-929 : Version of UI data 6th language in HDD
08-931 : Version of UI data 7th language in HDD
(4) Screens displayed during the download

## (a) Application downloading

The screens change as follows during the application downloading.


## (b) UI data downloading

The screens change as follows during the UI data downloading.




### 5.3.2 Engine firmware

The procedure to update the engine firmware (engine ROM/LGC board, scanner ROM/SCM board and printer ROM/IMC board) is described in this section.
(1) Jig board

The engine ROM/LGC board uses K-PWA-DLS-320, the scanner ROM/SCM board and the printer ROM/IMC board use K-PWA-DLM-320 as a jig board to update the engine firmware.

When updating the engine ROM/LGC board, use only the socket for ROM1 of K-PWA-DLS-320. (The socket for ROM2 is not used.) ( Page. 5-32)

Note: Pay attention to the position and direction of the ROM when it is attached to the jig board.
(2) Downloading
(a) Attach the ROM to the jig board and connect the board with the jig connector of the copier.
<<Engine ROM/LGC board>>

1. Take off the rear cover. ( Service Manual ch.2.5.1)
2. Connect the downloading jig with the jig connector on the LGC board (ROM attached side leftward).

<<Scanner ROM/SCM board>>
Note: Remember that the damp heater, lens cover, etc. are hot.
3. Take off the right top cover and feed side upper cover. ( Service Manual ch. 2.5.2)

Then, remove 2 screws to take off the connector cover (plate cover).
2. Connect the downloading jig with the jig connector on the SCM board (ROM attached side upward).

<<Printer ROM/IMC board>>

1. Take off the feed side upper and upper inner cover as well as the metal shield cover.
( - Service Manual ch. 2.5.2)
2. Connect the downloading jig with the jig connector on the IMC board (ROM attached side upward).

(b) Turn ON the power while [0] and [8] are pressed simultaneously (downloading is automatically started).
(c) Turn OFF the power when the LED on the jig board starts flashing. Remove the downloading jig.
(d) Check the version of the ROM in the setting mode (08) (engine ROM: 08-902, scanner ROM: 08-904, printer ROM: 08-903).

Notes: • It is assumed that the downloading was failed if the LED on the jig board does not start flashing even though 30 seconds have elapsed since the downloading was started. Check if the ROM is attached properly, if the ROM data were written correctly and if the downloading jig is connected properly.

- After the downloading, clean the mirror $-1,-2$ and -3 , the underside of shading correction plate and the original glass if any dust or oil stains on them.


## 6. POWER SUPPLY UNIT

### 6.1 Output Channel

There are four output channels which are not linked with the door switches, as shown below.
(1) $3.3 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{M})$ - For MPU on the SYS board, the image processing circuit, etc.
3.3VA: Pins 4 and 5, J707

Output to: IMC board, SYS board, AI board (via the IMG board), IMG board
3.3VB: Pin 1, J708

Output to: SCM board
(2) $5.1 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{M})$ - For mechanical control circuits on the LGC board, IMC board, SCM board,etc.
5.1VA: Pins 3, 4 and 5, J706

Output to: LGC board
5.1VB: Pins 6 and 7, J707

Output to: IMC board, SYS board, RLY board (via the IMC board), AI board (via the IMG board), IMG board
5.1VC: Pins 1, 2, 3 and 4, J710

Output to: built-in printer controller (optional)
5.1VD: Pins 3 and 4, J708

Output to: SCM board
(3) $12 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{M})$ — Mainly for analog circuits and the HDD (e.g. image quality sensor, color registration sensor)

12VA: Pin 10, J706
Output to: LGC board, IMC board (via the LGC board), image quality sensor (via the LGC board), registration sensor (via the LGC board)
12VB: Pin 7, J708
Output to: SCM board, SDV board (via the SCM board), HDD
12VC: Pins 9, 10, 11 and 12, J710
Output to: built-in printer controller (optional)
(4) $24 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{M})$ - For RADF, the finisher, fans, etc.

24VH: Pin 1, J706
Output to: LGC board
24VI: Pin 9, J708
Output to: SCM board
24VJ : Pins 1 and 3, J709
Output to: finisher

There are two output channels which are linked with the door switches.
(1) 5.1V(D) - For the laser diodes and the laser drivers
5.1VA: Pin 7, J702

Output to: LGC board
5.1VB: Pin 3, J705

Output to: IMC board, RLY board (via the IMC board), LDR board (via the IMC board)
(2) 24 V (D) - For the motors, clutches, solenoids, fans, etc.

24VA~C :Pins 1, 2 and 3, J702
Output to: LGC board, paper feed motor (via the LGC board),
fuser motor (via the LGC board),
main high-voltage transformer (via the LGC board),
transfer transformer (via the LGC board)
24VD: Pins 1, 2 and 3, J703
Output to: developer motor
24VE : Pins 6 and 7, J703
Output to: paper feed motor
24VF: Pins 1 and 2, J704
Output to: SCM board
24VG: Pin 1, J705
Output to: IMC board, polygonal motor (via the IMC board), tilt motors (via the IMC board)
24VK: Pins 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17 and 19, J711
Output to: LGC board

## <Output connector>

Not linked with the door switch:
J706 for the LGC board
J707 for the IMC board, SYS board, RLY board and IMG board
J708 for the scanner and RADF
J709 for the finisher
J710 for the built-in printer controller (optional)
Linked with the door switch:
J702 for the LGC board
J703 for the developer motor and the paper feed motor
J704 for the scanner
J705 for the IMC board, RLY board, LDR board and the polygonal motor
J711 for the drum motors, the transfer belt motor and the LGC board
<Fuse rating>

| F 1 | 12A/125V | Primary side |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| F2 | 12A/125V |  |
| F3 | 12A/125V | Secondary side |
| F5 | 4A/125V |  |
| F6 | 4A/125V |  |
| F7 | 5A/125V |  |
| F 8 | 4A/125V |  |
| F9 | 5A/125V |  |
| F10 | 4A/125V |  |
| ICP3 | 12A/125V |  |
| ICP4 | $3 \mathrm{~A} / 125 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |
| ICP5 | 3A/125V |  |
| ICP6 | 3A/125V |  |



## 7. WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION DIAGRAMS




## <Appendix> SPECIFICATIONS•ACCESSORIES•OPTIONS•SUPPLIES

## 1. Specifications

- Copy process
- Type
- Original table
- Acceptable originals

Indirect electrophotographic process (dry)
Console type
Fixed table (the left rear corner used for Standard original placement)
Type: Sheets, books and 3-dimensional objects. However, the automatic document feeder only accepts sheets of paper (64~105 g/m², or 17~28 lb.), excluding carbon paper, pasted sheets and stapled sheets.
Size : A3/LD max.

- Copy speed
(Copies/min.)

FC-210

| $\qquad$ |  | Cassette | Bypass feeding |  | LCF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Size specification YES | Size specification NO |  |
|  | A4, LT |  | 21(31) | 21(31) | 12(14) | 21(31) |
|  | B5 | 21(31) | 21(31) | 14(16) | - |
|  | A5-R, ST-R | 21(31) | 21(31) | 17(24) | - |
|  | A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | 17(23) | 17(19) | 17(19) | - |
|  | B4, LG | 14(19) | 14(16) | 14(16) | - |
|  | A3, LD | 12(16) | 12(14) | 12(14) | - |
|  | Full bleed(12"x 18 ") | - | 12(12) | 12(12) | - |
|  | A6-R | - | 21(24) | 21(24) | - |
|  | A4, LT | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) |
|  | B5, A5-R, ST-R | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | - |
|  | A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | 9.3(9.3) | 9.3(9.3) | 9.3(9.3) | - |
|  | B4, LG | 8.5(8.5) | 8.5(8.5) | 8.5(8.5) | - |
|  | A3, LD | 7.9(7.9) | 7.9(7.9) | 7.9(7.9) | - |
|  | Full bleed(12"x 18") | - | 7.7(7.7) | 7.7(7.7) | - |
|  | A6-R | - | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | - |
| $\begin{aligned} & \overline{\text { © }} \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\square} \end{aligned}$ | Thick Paper2(Allsize) | - | 2~6(2~6) | 2~6(2~6) | - |
|  | Thick Paper 3(All size) | - | 2~6(2~6) | 2~6(2~6) | - |
|  | OHP films (A4, LT) | 3.3(3.3) | 3.3(3.3) | - | - |

FC-310

| Paper size supply |  | Cassette | Bypass feeding |  | LCF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Size specification YES | Size specification NO |  |
| ıəded IemıN / גədedu!प」 | A4, LT |  | 31(31) | 24(24) | 14(14) | 31(31) |
|  | B5 | 31(31) | 24(24) | 16(16) | - |
|  | A5-R, ST-R | 31(31) | 24(24) | 24(24) | - |
|  | A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | 23(23) | 19(19) | 19(19) | - |
|  | B4, LG | 19(19) | 16(16) | 16(16) | - |
|  | A3, LD | 16(16) | 14(14) | 14(14) | - |
|  | Full bleed (12"x 18") | - | 12(12) | 12(12) | - |
|  | A6-R | - | 24(24) | 24(24) | - |
|  | A4, LT | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) |
|  | B5, A5-R, ST-R | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | - |
|  | A4-R, B5-R, LT-R | 9.3(9.3) | 9.3(9.3) | 9.3(9.3) | - |
|  | B4, LG | 8.5(8.5) | 8.5(8.5) | 8.5(8.5) | - |
|  | A3, LD | 7.9(7.9) | 7.9(7.9) | 7.9(7.9) | - |
|  | Full bleed (12" $\times 18$ ") | - | 7.7(7.7) | 7.7(7.7) | - |
|  | A6-R | - | 10.3(10.3) | 10.3(10.3) | - |
| $\begin{aligned} & \grave{\text { © }} \\ & \stackrel{ \pm}{ \pm} \end{aligned}$ | Thick Paper2(All size) | - | 2~6 (2~6) | 2~6 (2~6) | - |
|  | Thick Paper 3(All size) | - | 2~6 (2~6) | 2~6 (2~6) | - |
|  | OHP films (A4, LT) | 3.3(3.3) | 3.3(3.3) | - | - |

*Thin paper:64~79 g/m², or 17~20 lb.
*Normal paper:80~105 $\mathrm{g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$, or 21~28 lb .
*Thick paper 1:106~163 g/m², or 29lbs. $\sim 60 \mathrm{lb}$. cover/90lb. index
*Thick paper 2: $164 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \sim 209 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$, or $91 \sim 110 \mathrm{lb}$. index
*Thick paper 3: $210 \sim 256 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$, or $111 \sim 140 \mathrm{lb}$. index

* Values in parentheses ( ) are the copy speed in the black mode copying.
* "-" means "not available".
* The copy speeds listed are available when originals are manually placed for single-side, multiple copying.
* When the document feeder is used, the copy speed of 21 sheets per minute (FC-210) or 31 sheets per minute (FC-310) is only available under the following conditions:
- Original/Mode:

Single-side originals of A4/LT size, not selecting auto color, APS, automatic density and advance image enhancement mode

- Number of sheets set: 21 or over (FC-210) , 31 or over (FC- 310)
- Paper feeding: 2nd cassette
- Reproduction ratio: Actual ratio
* Reverse side copying speed of the automatic duplexing unit
(When specific paper size is selected)
A4, B5, A5-R, LT, ST-R: 21 sheets $/ \mathrm{min}$. (FC-210), 31 sheets $/ \mathrm{min}$. (FC-310)
A4-R, B5-R, LT-R: $\quad 17$ sheets $/ \mathrm{min}$. (FC-210), 23 sheets $/ \mathrm{min}$. (FC-310)
B4, LG:
A3, LD:
14 sheets/min. (FC-210), 19 sheets/min. (FC-310)
12 sheets $/ \mathrm{min}$. (FC-210), 16 sheets/min. (FC-310)
* System copy speed

| Copy mode |  | Copies/min. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Single-sided originals | 1 set | $16[18]$ |
| $\downarrow$ | 3 sets | $19[25]$ |
| Single-sided copies | 5 sets | $19[27]$ |
| Single-sided originals | 1 set | $8[9]$ |
| $\downarrow$ | 3 sets | $14[17]$ |
| Two-sided copies | 5 sets | $16[21]$ |
| Two-sided originals | 1 set | $7[7]$ |
| $\downarrow$ | 3 sets | $12[15]$ |
| Two-sided copies | 5 sets | $14[18]$ |
| Two-sided originals | 1 set | $11[11]$ |
| $\downarrow$ | 3 sets | $16[19]$ |
| Single-sided copies | 5 sets | $18[23]$ |

* Values in square brackets [ ] are for FC-310.
* The copy speeds are applicable when 10 A4sized originals are set in the automatic document feeder and are copied with any of the modes listed on the left. The first copy time is included.
* These values are attained in full color mode copying.
- Copy paper

|  | Cassette | Duplex copy | LCF | Bypass copy | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Size |  |  | A4, LT | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A3~A5-R } \\ & \text { LD~ST-R } \end{aligned}$ | In the bypass mode, either irregular sizes or arbitrary sizes can be set. |
| Weight | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 64 \sim 163 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \\ \text { 177b-601b.cover } \\ \text { q90b.index } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 64 \sim 105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \\ & 17 \sim 28 \mathrm{lb} . \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 64 \sim 163 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \\ 17 \mathrm{~b} \sim 60 \mathrm{~b} . \mathrm{cover} \\ \sim 901 \mathrm{~b} . \mathrm{index} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 64 ~ 256 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \\ & \text { 17b~140lb.index } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Special paper | - | - | - | Recommended OHP films and sticker labels |  |

- First copy time $\qquad$ Approx. 9.5 seconds (A4/LT, the first cassette, 100\%)
- Warming-up time $\qquad$ Approx. 4 minutes
- Multiple copying $\qquad$ Up to 999 copies; entry by digital keys
- Reproduction ratio $\qquad$ Actual ratio: $\quad 100 \pm 0.5 \%$ Zooming: $\quad 25 \sim 400 \%$ in increments of $1 \%$
- Resolution/Gradation $\qquad$ Read:
Write: $\quad$ Corresponding to $600 \mathrm{dpi} \times 600 \mathrm{dpi}$ (primary scanning only : 256 division smoothing)
- Excluded image width $\qquad$ Leading edge: $5.0 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$, Trailing edge: $2.5 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$ Side edge: $\quad 2.0 \pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$
- Paper feeding $\qquad$ Automatic feeding: Cassettes - 2 pieces standard (expandable up to 4 pieces by installing optional cassettes)
LCF - Optional (Stack height 165 mm : equivalent to 1500 sheets of $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}, 20 \mathrm{lb}$.)
Bypass feeding: (Stack height 21 mm : equivalent to 130 sheets of $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}, 20 \mathrm{lb}$.)
- Capacity for originals $\qquad$ A4, A4-R, B5, B5-R, A5-R, LT, LT-R, ST-R: 50 sheets ( $\left.64 \sim 90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)(17 \sim 24 \mathrm{lb}$.
(Optional automatic document feeder)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 40 \text { sheets }\left(91 \sim 105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)(25 \sim 28 \mathrm{lb} .) \\
& \text { B4, Folio, LG, Comp: } 35 \text { sheets }\left(64 \sim 90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)(17 \sim 24 \mathrm{lb} .) \\
& 25 \text { sheets }\left(91 \sim 105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)(25 \sim 28 \mathrm{lb} .) \\
& \text { A3, LD: } 25 \text { sheets }\left(64 \sim 90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)(17 \sim 24 \mathrm{lb} .) \\
& 20 \text { sheets }\left(91 \sim 105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)(25 \sim 28 \mathrm{lb} .)
\end{aligned}
$$

- Stacking capacity of sheets Paper weight $64 \sim 105 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}, 17 \sim 28 \mathrm{lb} .: 30$ sheets
(Optional automatic duplexing unit)
- Toner supplying $\qquad$ Automatic toner-density detection and supply Toner cartridge replacing method
- Density control ........................ Automatic density mode and manual density mode selectable in 11 steps
- Weight

Approx. $187 \mathrm{~kg} / 413 \mathrm{lb}$.

- Power requirements $\qquad$ AC 115V/16A, AC 220 - 240V/9A
- Power consumption $\qquad$ 2.0 kW or less ( 115 V series, 200 V series)
* The automatic document feeder, automatic duplexing unit and LCF are supplied with electric power through the copier.
- Power consumption and warm-up time at energy saving mode

|  | Mode |  | Power Consumption | Warm-up time | Efficiency |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 115 V series | Energy saving mode | Level 1 | Approx.100W <br> (Approx.135W) | Approx. 2 min 30 sec . | Approx. 56\% <br> (Approx. 48\%) |
|  |  | Level 2 | Approx.160W (Approx.195W) | Approx. 1 min 15 sec . | Approx. 29\% <br> (Approx. 25\%) |
|  | Normal standby |  | Approx. 225W (Approx.260W) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline 0 \% \\ (0 \%) \end{array}$ |
| 200V series | Energy saving mode | Level 1 | Approx.100W <br> (Approx.135W) | Approx. 2 min 15 sec . | Approx. 57\% <br> (Approx. 49\%) |
|  |  | Level 2 | Approx.160W (Approx.195W) | Approx. 1 min 15 sec . | Approx. 30\% <br> (Approx. 26\%) |
|  | Normal standby |  | Approx. 230W <br> (Approx.265W) | 0 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 0 \% \\ (0 \%) \end{array}$ |

* Values in parentheses ( ) are when the copier is with full options: The automatic document feeder, automatic duplexing unit, large-capacity feeder, finisher, hole punch unit, cassette modules and AI board
* Level 1: Energy saver mode with priority aim of energy saving

Level 2: Energy saver mode with priority aim of returning to standby


## 2. Accessories

| Setup instructions | 1 pc. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operator's manual | 1 pc. (not available for MJD) |
| Color copy guide | 1 pc. (not available for MJD) |
| PM sticker | 1 pc. (for MJD) |
| Setup report | $1 \mathrm{set} .($ for NAD and MJD) |
| CS card | 1 pc. (for MJD) |
| Drum | 4 pcs. |
| Operator's manual pocket | 1 pc. |
| Detachable code | 1 pc. (for ASD, AUD and MJD) |
| Copy receiving tray | 1 pc. |
| Preventive maintenance check list | 1 pc. (for MJD) |
| Toner bag symbol sticker | 1 pc. (for MJD) |
| Warrantee sheet | $1 \mathrm{pc}$. (for NAD) |
| DF level up kit | 1 pc. |

## * Machine version

NAD: North America
MJD: Europe
AUD: Australia
ASD: Asia

## 3. Options

| Platen cover | KA-2060PC |
| :--- | :--- |
| Automatic document feeder (RADF) | MR-3006A, MR-3006E |
| Automatic duplexing unit (ADU) | MD-5007 |
| Cassette module | MY-1020 |
| Slot cover | KE-FC22 |
| Large capacity feeder (LCF) | MP-1503LT,MP1503A4 |
| Finisher | MJ-1019, MJ-1020 (with saddle stitching function) |
| Hole punch unit | MJ-6002N,MJ-6002E,MJ-6002F,MJ-6002S |
| Staple cartridge | STAPLE-700 <br> STAPLE-600 (for saddle stitching) |
| External printer controller (Fiery Z5) | GA-1130 |
| Built-in printer controller (Fiery New X3e) | GA-1120 |
| Video I/F kit for external controller connection | KR-8005 |
| Control panel kit for built-in controller | KR-8006 |
| Key copy counter, Key copy counter socket | MU-8, MU-10 |
| Work table | KK-2460 |
| Work table kit | KN-FC22W01 |
| Al board | KR-2030 |
| Damp heater kit | MF-FC22U, MF-FC22E |
| Operator's manual <br> (English, French, German, Spanish, Italian) | MANUAL FC31 |
| Color copy guide <br> (English, French, German, Spanish, Italian) | GUIDE FC31 |

## 4. Replacement Units/Supplies

(1) Replacement units

| Electrophotographic processing unit (EPU) | EPU-FC31 |
| :--- | :--- |
| Transfer belt unit (TBU) | TR-BLT-FC31 |
| Fuser unit | FUSER-FC31-115/127/200 |

(2) Supplies

| TonerY (Yellow) | PS-ZTFC31Y, PS-ZTFC31EY |
| :--- | :--- |
| Toner M (Magenta) | PS-ZTFC31M, PS-ZTFC31EM |
| Toner C (Cyan) | PS-ZTFC31C, PS-ZTFC31EC |
| Toner K (Black) | PS-ZTFC31K, PS-ZTFC31EK |
| Toner bag | PS-TBFC22, PS-TBFC22E |

5. System List

Free Manuals Download Websitehttp://myh66.comhttp://usermanuals.ushttp://www.somanuals.com
http://www.4manuals.cc
http://www.manual-lib.com
http://www.404manual.com
http://www.luxmanual.com
http://aubethermostatmanual.com
Golf course search by state
http://golfingnear.com
Email search by domain
http://emailbydomain.com
Auto manuals search
http://auto.somanuals.com
TV manuals search
http://tv.somanuals.com

[^0]:    * "Fine adjustment of each fuser and registration motor rotation speed" should be adjusted after printer section related adjustment. ( Page. 4-64~68)

[^1]:    *1 When adjusting printer section, perform "Forced performing of image quality control " and then "automatic gamma adjustment".
    *2 When adjusting parameters, perform "Automatic gamma adjustment".

